THE UNITED PRESBYTERIAN MISSION LIBRARY
475 Riverside Drive, New York 27, N. Y.

WITHDRAWN
U. P. MISSION LIBRARY

Library of The Theological Seminary

PRINCETON · NEW JERSEY

PRESENTED BY

The United Presbyterian
Mission Library

SCC
#11,546 DT826
.L65

Encampment in the Great Nimiqua Country.

TRAVELS

INTO THE

INTERIOR PARTS

OF

AFRICA.

BY THE WAY OF THE

CAPE OF GOOD HOPE;

IN THE YEARS 1780, 81, 82, 83, 84, AND 85.

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH OF M. LE VAILLANT.

THE SECOND EDITION.

ILLUSTRATED WITH TWELVE ELEGANT COPPER-PLATES.

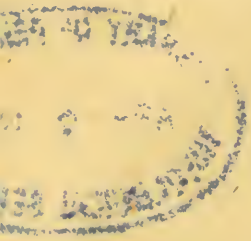
VOL. I.

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR G. G. AND J. ROBINSON, PATERNOSTER-ROW.

1796.

LIBRARY OF PRINCETON THEOLOGICAL SEMINARY
APR 7 1966



WITHDRAWN
U. P. MISSION LIBRARY

7308
T
Vol. 1

AUTHOR'S PREFACE.

NATURALISTS have thought proper to eſtabliſh relations between the anatomy of animals and that of man, and to trace out the former from the latter. By means of this arrangement, underſtood only by connoiſſeurs, thoſe parts on which a bird reſts all its weight are called its *toes*; that part which riſes more or leſs perpendicularly, inſtead of being called a leg according to the common idea, is named a *foot*; the latter having the heel above it, is immediately followed by the leg, which generally paſſes for the *thigh*; and, in ſhort, this laſt part, which in the living bird is ſcarcely diſtinguiſhable, is concealed, and, as one may ſay, forms a part of the body itſelf. Hence we may conclude, that the foot of a heron,

THE UNITED PRESBYTERIAN MISSION LIBRARY

for example, is as large as its whole body: an aſſertion which would appear ridiculous and abſurd to thoſe not previouſly informed, that this methodical diſtribution is adopted by all the literati. It is therefore plain that a bird does not walk on its feet and talons, but on its claws. This explanation I have thought neceſſary, in order that I may be better underſtood, both in the relation of my voyages, and that more extenſive work to which it is only, in ſome meaſure, an introduction. Should I have occaſion to ſpeak after this arrangement of my acquiſitions in quadrupedes, birds, &c. obliged to make uſe of the terms and meaſures eſtabliſhed by ornithologiſts, people who are not naturaliſts, and who may deign to read my work, would certainly find errors and obſcurity in three-fourths of my deſcriptions, did I not give them this key, which is indiſpenſably neceſſary to whoever may, for the firſt time, caſt their eyes over this part of natural hiſtory.

I can readily forgive the authors of thoſe voluminous works, and the immenſe compilations in which old books are laid under con-

contribution, which are ſtuffed with long quotations, and where the dreams of the imagination and ignorance are preſented as immutable truths, merely becauſe they are ancient. But when a writer, ſeized with a mania for a certain ſcience, has not in himſelf ſufficient reſources to extend its progreſs; when, immured in his cabinet, he pretends to eſtabliſh principles and dictate laws; when he proſtitutes the valuable gifts of genius to propagate old errors, and to cover, with the graces of elocution, lies received as truths by our forefathers; however he may diſguiſe, twiſt, or appropriate them to himſelf, I cannot forgive him whilſt he thus evidently adorns himſelf with the ſpoils of others, whatever trouble he may have taken to arrange the different patches.

Fully reſolved to ſpeak only of what I have ſeen or done, I ſhall introduce nothing into this work which is not my own; and on this account I ſhall certainly not be reproached for the faults of thoſe who preceded me.

If in ſome places of my relation obſervations be found diametrically oppoſite to

thoſe of other travellers, I ſhall not go ſo far as to aſſert that they have been deceived: I mean to depreciate no one; I chooſe rather to ſuppoſe, on certain articles, that difference of time, or their being ſeen under different points of view, may have produced differences alſo in their relations and reſults; they then become only errors or illuſions, of the ſame nature as an optical deception.

Reſpecting objects, however, which, having been too ſlightly obſerved, disfigure the truth eſſentially, my opinion (though I wiſh it not to be univerſally adopted) will never give way when I am certain of facts, and advance nothing but what is ſupported by proofs.

It is not above a century ago that a taſte for travelling has prevailed in Europe. The French above all, more than any other people happy in their country, and attached to their native ſoil, quitted it with reluctance, and conſidered the abſence of a month as a kind of baniſhment; they were contented with waiting for, and eagerly ſwallowing, the ridiculous ſtories publiſhed by daring

daring impoſtors reſpecting remote nations, and they amuſed themſelves with accounts of their wonderful diſcoveries and incredible adventures. The exaggerating writer bargained, if I may ſay ſo, with the public credulity, and thought himſelf well recompenſed if he found only one-half of the bombaſt and the wonderful contained in his work exploded. The ſciences wandered in the darkneſs of uncertainty, and natural hiſtory was not even in its infancy.

By little and little the genius of diſcovery extended her wings, and the letters and the arts have given place to the ſciences. A paſſion for travelling is awakened; that deſire, ſtill more inſatiable, of acquiring knowledge, and comparing the objects of it, has increaſed in proportion to the wonders produced by it: the more dangers have been removed, the more men have paſſed their ancient bounds; and what formerly appeared an inſurmountable obſtacle, at preſent is only a puerile excuſe, a ſhameful evaſion to conceal one's weakneſs and timidity.

Being educated more than any other per-

ſon in quite different principles, I always entertained a moſt ardent deſire for travelling, which I endeavoured to repreſs; but it was only by yielding to its tranſports, that I was able to moderate its violence.

I croſſed the ſeas, as I wiſhed to ſurvey other men, other productions, and other climates; I penetrated into ſome of the unknown deſarts of Africa; and I may ſay that I conquered a ſmall portion of the earth.

I had no wiſh to acquire reputation; I was conſcious of no merit that could entitle me to it, and I employed my time only in pleaſure.

As my friends and my family were of opinion that an account of my travels, and ſome details reſpecting my diſcoveries in natural hiſtory, might be of utility, I have given them this account and theſe details, ſuch as they are, claiming to myſelf on this account no other merit than that of complaiſance, and renouncing every kind of pretenſion to literature, the burden of which I could not ſupport.

It may perhaps be thought ſtrange, that

to

to give an account of travels lately undertaken into Africa I have been obliged to return to the paſt, and to conduct my readers to the firſt ſteps of my infancy in South America. To explain this, I muſt obſerve, that I thought it would not be improper to juſtify, by the commencement of my life, my manner of ſeeing, thinking, and acting, which always will be agreeable to the taſte of the climate, and which, judged perhaps with ſeverity, would not fail to diſpleaſe thoſe obſtinate minds who can never ſuffer their prejudices to be deſtroyed, or principles and cuſtoms hitherto received to be attacked, without being out of temper. But in whatever manner my freedom in expreſſing my thoughts, and even in pretending to correct the errors of genius, may be conſidered, I think it of importance to let them know, that no private hatred, no envy, and no ſecret diſpleaſure, can overbalance in my mind my regard to truth, which I cheriſh above all things, and to which I have ſacrificed, upon more than one occaſion, even my vanity.

At the end of this work I ſhall preſent the lovers of natural hiſtory with a general deſcription

ſcription of all the individuals, quadrupedes and birds, which I procured in my excurſions, and have now in my poſſeſſion. Thoſe animals, of which accounts have been never before given, or which have been hitherto unknown, will be accompanied with coloured engravings, repreſenting ſeveral new genera, and conſiderable varieties in the ſpecies. Though a deſcription and figure of the giraffe have been given after ſome authors, this has not prevented me from giving new ones. What has been hitherto ſaid reſpecting this animal, and the figures which have been engraved of it, have no reſemblance to the original in my cabinet, or to what I have obſerved of its manners in its native country.

INTRODUCTION.

THAT part of Guiana, belonging to the Dutch, which is under the government of the Weſt-India Company, is perhaps the leaſt known to naturaliſts, though of all South America it is that, without doubt, which preſents the moſt curious and extraordinary productions of every kind. Situated under the ſcorching climate of the torrid zone, five degrees north of the line, this country, ſtill enveloped by the cruſt of time, conceals, if I may ſo expreſs it, the focus where nature forms her exceptions to thoſe general rules which ſhe ſeems to have eſtabliſhed. Extending along the coaſt about an hundred leagues, its breadth is almoſt unlimited. Here the river Surinam rolls its majeſtic ſtream: and upon its left bank, three miles from the ſea, riſes Paramaribo, the principal place of this vaſt colony;

the ſpot where I was born, and the ſcene of my infant years. Educated by enlightened parents, who endeavoured to procure thoſe valuable and intereſting objects which are diſperſed throughout the country, I had continually before my eyes the fruits of their labour, and I enjoyed at my eaſe the whole of their curious collection; From my ealieſt years, theſe tender parents, who could not be a moment without me, and who by their taſte were often expoſed to diſtant journeys, and to be long abſent at the extremities of the colony, carried me along with them, making me a ſharer in their travels, their fatigues, and their amuſements. My firſt years were thus ſpent in the deſarts, and I was born almoſt a ſavage. When reaſon, which in warm climates always precedes age, began to dawn in my mind, my taſte was not long in diſplaying itſelf, and my parents did every thing in their power to aſſiſt the firſt efforts of my curioſity. Under ſuch excellent inſtructors I every day taſted new pleaſures: I heard them diſcourſe in a manner ſuited to my capacity on the objects which they had acquired, and on thoſe which they hoped to procure in future. By theſe means an

abundance

abundance of ideas and relations was treaſured up in my mind—at firſt, in a confuſed manner, I muſt own; but gradually with more order and method. Nature, therefore, was my earlieſt inſtructor, becauſe it was towards her that my views were firſt directed.

Soon after, a deſire of making acquiſitions, and a ſpirit of imitation, added impetuoſity, and I may ſay impatience, to my amuſing purſuits. Every thing ſeemed to whiſper to my ſelf-love that I alſo ſhould attempt to form a cabinet of natural hiſtory. Suffering myſelf, therefore, to be led away by this ſeducing idea, without loſs of time, I traiterouſly declared war againſt the weakeſt animals, and began to ſcarch for caterpillars, butterflies, beetles, and in a word for inſects of every kind.

When people labour for themſelves, they may, with confined means, and rude and uncultivated talents, form an indifferent work: but in my opinion they will always ſucceed well, when they ſpare neither time, care, nor attention; and when they employ all their talents and abilities. With ſuch a diſpoſition, the

the almoſt certain ſign of ſucceſs, I beheld my pretty collection of inſects increaſe daily under my hands. I ſet the higheſt value upon it, and eſteemed it beyond meaſure. As I had been the ſole creator of it, the reader may eaſily gueſs how much ſuperior I conſidered it to that of my parents. Pride, which is blind, makes the maſterpieces of folly and genius march hand in hand.

Entirely occupied with my enjoyments, I had never yet perceived that ſome obſtacle always occurs to prevent the ſucceſs of every enterprize.

In one of our excurſions we had killed a female ape, of that ſpecies which in the country are called *Baboons*. As ſhe carried on her back a young one, which had not been wounded, we took them both along with us; and, when we returned to the plantation, my ape had not quitted the ſhoulders of its mother. It clung ſo cloſely to them, that I was obliged to have the aſſiſtance of a negro to diſengage it; but ſcarcely was it ſeparated from her, when, like a bird, it darted upon a wooden block that ſtood near, covered with my father's peruke, which

it

it embraced with its four paws, and it could not abſolutely be compelled to quit its poſition. Deceived by its inſtinct, it ſtill imagined itſelf to be on the back of its mother, and under her protection. As it ſeemed perfectly at eaſe on the peruke, I reſolved to ſuffer it to remain, and to feed it there with goats milk. It continued in its error for three weeks; but after that period emancipating itſelf from its own authority, it quitted the foſtering peruke, and by its amuſing tricks became the friend and the favourite of the whole family.

I had, however, without ſuſpecting it, introduced the wolf among my flocks. One morning, on entering my chamber, the door of which I had been ſo imprudent as to leave open, I beheld my unworthy pupil making a hearty breakfaſt on my noble collection. In the firſt tranſports of my paſſion, I reſolved to ſtrangle it in my arms; but rage and fury ſoon gave place to pity, when I perceived that its voraciouſneſs had expoſed it to the moſt cruel puniſhment. In eating the beetles it had ſwallowed ſome of the pins upon which they were fixed; and, though it made

a thouſand

a thouſand efforts to throw them up, all its exertions were in vain. The torture which it ſuffered made me forget the devaſtation it had occaſioned; I thought only of affording it relief: but neither my tears, nor all the art of my father's ſlaves, whom I called from all quarters with loud cries, were able to preſerve its life. This accident diſconcerted me very much, but it did not diſcourage me: I ſoon gave myſelf up to new reſearches; and, not contented with one treaſure, I wiſhed to unite ſeveral. By a natural progreſſion I turned my attention towards birds. As our ſlaves did not ſupply me with a ſufficient number, I armed myſelf with a tube *, and an Indian bow: in a ſhort ſpace of time I could uſe them with much dexterity. I ſpent whole days in watching; in a word, I became a keen ſportſman. It was then obſerved, and I myſelf was ſenſible of it, that this taſte was changed into a violent paſſion, which diſturbed even my hours of repoſe, and to which years have ſtill added ſtrength.

* *Sarbacanne*—a kind of tube, through which ſmall darts are blown with the mouth.

Some

Some of my friends have accuſed me of coolneſs and inſenſibility; and a greater number of them have conſidered the ſingular journeys I afterwards undertook as raſh enterprizes. The former I readily forgive; to the latter I ſhall make no reply: thoſe, however, who give themſelves the leaſt trouble to review the firſt purſuits of my infancy, will be leſs ſurpriſed at this appearance of originality; and will eaſily perceive that my education, while it accounts for the cauſe of it, pleads alſo its excuſe.

Some time after, my parents, who had fixed the period of their departure for Europe, and who ſought no other happineſs than that of being united to their family and friends, having ſettled their affairs, I embarked with them in a ſhip called the Catherine, and, on the 4th of April 1763, ſet ſail for Holland. In the joy of my heart I partook, by anticipation, of all thoſe pleaſures and amuſements which my parents propoſed to enjoy during the paſſage. A curioſity, very natural at my age, added to my tranſports: but this agitation, or rather delirium, did not render me inſenſible to regret. In

ſo ſhort a ſpace of time I could not become ungrateful, and without emotion loſe ſight of that beneficent country in which I firſt drew breath. I often caſt a fond look on thoſe happy ſhores, which were ſtill becoming more and more diſtant. In proportion as they receded from me, and as wafted by the winds I approached the frozen climates of the north, a diſmal ſadneſs threw a gloom over my imagination, and diſſipated my conjectures concerning the future.

After a dangerous and diſagreeable paſſage we caſt anchor in the Texel, about nine or ten in the morning, on the 12th of July following.

Being at length arrived in Europe, every thing I ſaw appeared ſo new to me—I ſhewed ſo much impatience, haraſſed people with ſo many queſtions, and every object that preſented itſelf to my view ſeemed ſo extraordinary—that I myſelf was an object of aſtoniſhment to all thoſe who were around me. My importunities, however, did not always raiſe the laugh againſt me; and I made an ample return, by pertinent remarks on America, for the information which the

people

people of Europe had the condeſcenſion to give me.

After ſpending ſome time in Holland we repaired to France, to the city where my father was born, and where he ſettled in the boſom of his family. Here I had a new opportunity of indulging my taſte, in the cabinet of Mr. Bécœur, which, for the ornithology of Europe, contains the moſt numerous and beſt preſerved collection I have ever met with.

In Surinam I had followed a plan, with reſpect to birds, which ſucceeded very well, but which ſpoke little to the imagination, and ſtill leſs to the eyes. The only method I knew, was to preſerve their ſkins by putting them between the leaves of large books; but here a quite different ſpectacle awakened all my ſenſes. Beſides the merit of preſervation, it was neceſſary to reſtore their proper forms. Theſe two eſſential points embarraſſed me much: I reſolved to make them a peculiar ſtudy; and to theſe I devoted my whole attention. During a reſidence of two years in Germany, and of ſeven in Lorraine and Alſace, I made prodigious havoc among

the feathered tribe. To the diſtinction of ſpecies I wiſhed to join alſo a thorough knowledge of their manners; and I was never perfectly ſatisfied with my excurſions, but when I was able to ſurpriſe the male and the female in ſuch a ſituation as no longer permitted me to doubt of their ſex. I have often ſpent whole weeks in watching, to diſtinguiſh the ſpecies of birds, before I could procure a pair.

In the ſpace of eight or nine years, therefore, by care and labour, and after many attempts and much devaſtation, I was able not only to give to theſe animals, ſo tender and delicate, their proper forms; but alſo to keep them in that pure and ſound ſtate of preſervation, which makes all the merit of my collection. By being habituated to live with them in the fields, in the woods, and in their moſt ſecret retreats, I have learned alſo to diſtinguiſh the ſexes in the moſt invariable manner; a divining art, if I may uſe the expreſſion, which I do not pretend to conſider as a great merit, but which a very ſmall number of ornithologiſts have acquired. How often have I ſeen in cabinets, curious

enough

enough in other reſpects, ſometimes forced ſeparations, ſometimes monſtrous and unnatural alliances! Here, placed as male and female, two beings that had never met together; and there, a male and a female claſſed as two different ſpecies, &c.

In this intereſting part of natural hiſtory I more and more acquired knowledge; but I confeſs that, inſtead of being ſatisfied, it only proved to me the inſufficiency of my own ſtrength. A more extenſive field was, however, about to be diſplayed before me: opportunity ſeemed to call me at a diſtance, and to invite me to put off the time no longer.

In the courſe of the year 1777, a favourable circumſtance having conducted me to Paris, like every other ſtranger who arrives for the firſt time in that capital, I paid my tribute of admiration to the cabinets of the curious, and of men of letters. I was charmed with the beauty and variety of the objects which they contained, and with the prodigious number of individuals of every ſpecies, which, like a forced contribution, had come from

from the four quarters of the world to be claſſed methodically, as far as is poſſible, in a ſpace always unluckily too confined. During a reſidence of three years, I ſaw, ſtudied, and made myſelf acquainted with all the moſt celebrated cabinets; but their ſuperb collections ſoon made me uneaſy: they left a vacuum in my mind which nothing could fill up. I no longer beheld, in theſe, aſſemblages of foreign ſpoils, but general magazines, where different beings, ranged without choice, and without taſte, were buried in profound ſleep for ſcience. Nothing gave me any preciſe information reſpecting their manners, their cuſtoms, and their habitudes, which are things the moſt eſſential to be known. This was the ſtudy which had engaged the greateſt ſhare of my attention in my youth. I had read, it is true, different works upon natural hiſtory, but filled with contradictions ſo diſguſting, that the taſte which is not yet formed muſt loſe much by peruſing them. Above all, I had ſtudied, with the utmoſt avidity, thoſe immortal maſterpieces, conſecrated for the uſe of poſterity

rity by one of the greateſt geniuſes who have followed the ſame purſuits. I every day burnt freſh incenſe at the feet of his ſtatue; but the magic of his eloquence did not ſeduce me ſo far as to make me admire the flights of his imagination; and I could not pardon in the philoſopher the exaggerations of the poet.

Beſides, and above all, I was continually turning my thoughts towards thoſe parts of the globe which, having never been explored, might, by affording new knowledge, help to rectify that already acquired. I conſidered as ſupremely happy the mortal who ſhould have the courage to ſeek it at the ſource; and in this reſpect the interior parts of Africa appeared to me a Peru. It was a country as yet untouched for the naturaliſt. Full of theſe ideas, I perſuaded myſelf that the ardor of zeal might make up for want of genius; and that, by being an accurate obſerver, one might become a great enough writer. My enthuſiaſm ſuggeſted to me that I was the privileged perſon for whom this enterprize was reſerved. I readily liſtened

ened to its feducing dictates, and from that moment I devoted myſelf to it. Neither the ties of affection, nor thoſe of friendſhip, were capable of diverting me from my purpoſe. I communicated my intention to no one; and, blind to every obſtacle, I quitted Paris on the 17th of July 1780.

TRAVELS

INTO THE

INTERIOR PARTS

OF

AFRICA.

VOYAGE TO THE CAPE.

IMPATIENT to carry my intended plan into execution, I repaired to Holland, where I viſited the principal cities of that republic, and took a view of their curioſities. When I arrived at Amſterdam, I found treaſures, of which I had before entertained no idea. I was received with the utmoſt politeneſs by all the literati, and I had free acceſs to every cabinet. But what principally excited my admiration was that of Mr. Temminck, treaſurer to the Eaſt-India Company. In that beautiful collection I obſerved a multitude of valuable objects which I had never ſeen in

France. Every thing in it appeared to me extremely rare, and to be in a ſtate of the higheſt preſervation. His noble place for breeding birds alſo exhibited, in an admirable ſeries, a double view of nature and art, united to overcome the effects of climate. There the enchanted eye may admire alive the moſt beautiful and leaſt known individuals of every ſpecies; and there one may ſee, by the aſſiduous care beſtowed upon them, birds the moſt diſtant and the moſt remote from one another multiply and propagate, as if they lived in their native countries. This ſight I confeſs, ſtill ſerved to redouble my ardor; and completely fortified me againſt every obſtacle, and againſt all thoſe dangers which I had reſolved to encounter.

Having ſoon formed an intimate friendſhip with Mr. Temminck, he ſhewed me every mark of attention and kindneſs. As he had it in his power, more than any one elſe, to favour my deſign, I did not heſitate to communicate it to him. Being ſo congenial with his own purſuits, he highly approved of it; and pointed out thoſe means which I ought to purſue in order to ſucceed. He himſelf ſpared neither care nor labour. I was

happy

happy enough to obtain permiſſion to take a paſſage for the Cape in a veſſel belonging to the Eaſt-India Company. The time of my departure was fixed: and I procured from my reſpectable friend very warm recommendations; without which, by a ſingular fatality, as will be ſeen hereafter, I ſhould have been infallibly expoſed to the moſt cruel embarraſſment.

Matters being thus far ſettled, I employed myſelf, without remiſſion, in making the neceſſary preparations for this grand enterprize. When I had procured every thing that I thought likely to be of uſe to me in the interior parts of Africa, I took leave of my friends, and of Europe; and, ſetting out in a boat which came to receive me, was conducted to the Texel aboard of the *Held-Woltemaade**, a veſſel deſtined for Ceylon, but which was to touch at the Cape of Good Hope. The wind being unfavourable for quitting the Texel, we were under the neceſſity of waiting eight days. During that interval, I learned that our veſſel was an *ex-voto* of the Eaſt-India Company, in commemoration of a gallant action performed

* The Captain's name was S—— V——.

by an inhabitant of the Cape, named *Woltemaade*, who during a dreadful ſtorm had been able, with the aſſiſtance of his horſe, to ſave fourteen ſeamen belonging to a veſſel ſhipwrecked in Table Bay; but that he himſelf, the victim of his generous efforts, had periſhed in his laſt attempt, owing to his own fatigue, and that of his horſe, added to the weight of the unfortunate men who crowded upon him, from a dread that the veſſel might ſink before he could be again able to return. A particular account of this very affecting cataſtrophe may be ſeen in Dr. Sparmann's Voyage to the Cape.

The wind at length becoming favourable, we unmoored, at eleven o'clock in the morning, on the 19th of December 1781, the very day before the Engliſh commenced hoſtilities againſt the Dutch. Had we remained twenty-four hours longer, the Company would not have permitted us to depart; which would have diſconcerted me very unſeaſonably, and might have perhaps ruined my plan, and even my hopes. Cloudy weather and a thick fog enabled us to paſs through the Channel without being obſerved by the Engliſh, and we gained the open ſea, cleaving the waves in perfect ſecurity,

curity, without ever ſuſpecting that the flames of war had burſt forth in every quarter around us. Sailing ſometimes at a quick, and ſometimes at a ſlow rate, we followed the *Mercury*, another veſſel belonging to the Company, which was purſuing the ſame courſe, and which was commanded by our commodore. Thus far nothing remarkable occurred in our voyage; but we were ſoon about to feel a part of the general convulſion. As I knew that in a paſſage of three, four, and perhaps ſix months, I ſhould experience many tedious and dull moments, I took the precaution of furniſhing myſelf with a few books before my departure. Among my travels, and works on natural hiſtory, I had the relation of M. De la Caille, which for amuſement I read in preference to any other; but I remember that, having one day fallen upon a paſſage very antiphilanthropic, and full of fanaticiſm, I immediately threw down the book in a paſſion, with a reſolution of peruſing it no longer. The paſſage is as follows: "The cuſtom of going "out to hunt runaway negroes, and thoſe "who turn plunderers, as we hunt ſavage "animals, has nothing in it that can offend "the delicacy of an European. The moment

" when men, uſeful in ſociety, abandon their " ſituations, either from a ſpirit of libertiniſm " or of avarice, they degrade themſelves be- " low brutes, and deſerve the moſt rigorous " treatment." Reflecting afterwards on the humane, mild, and liberal character, which has every where been beſtowed upon this learned man, I again took up his book, and found theſe reflections: " Laying prejudice " aſide, which of the two is preferable---he " who cultivates the arts, and invents excep- " tions contrary to the rules of nature; or he " who, contented with the neceſſaries of life, " regulates his conduct according to the max- " ims of ſtrict and ſcrupulous juſtice?" I then recollected that the abbé De la Caille had been ſnatched from letters and the ſciences, before he had time to put the laſt hand to his Journal; and I imputed to the barbarous ignorance of the editor that infamous paragraph, which could in no manner have fallen from the pen of a clergyman, a philoſopher, and a man of letters.

On the firſt of February 1781, being three degrees north of the line, we were informed at break of day that a ſail was ſeen in the horizon. At that time the Mercury was a great

way

way ahead out of ſight, and we were perfectly becalmed. In vain had we recourſe to our ſpy-glaſſes; nor could we diſtinguiſh, until nine in the morning, that it was only a veſſel of ſmall ſize. Some believed it to be French; others maintained that it was Engliſh: each reaſoned according to his own manner, and formed various conjectures, till its nearer approach ſhould diſcover the truth. Some hours after we perceived that it was towed along by two boats, and that it was advancing towards us by the help of oars. As we then concluded that it was a veſſel in diſtreſs, approaching to beg aſſiſtance, we ſuffered it to come up to us without interruption. About three in the afternoon, finding it cloſe to us, we diſplayed our colours, and fired a gun; but we were very much ſurpriſed to receive a ſhot in our poop, which was followed by a whole broadſide: the privateer at the ſame time hoiſted the Engliſh flag. In vain ſhould I attempt to deſcribe the ſtupefaction and aſtoniſhment of the whole crew upon this unforeſeen event. In the veſſel there was not perhaps one man who had ever been in an action. The captain and the officers, accuſtomed to purſue their voyage in profound peace, had never commanded in the like circumſtances; one may

therefore eaſily imagine what muſt have been the conſternation of theſe poor people, unexpectedly attacked in this manner, and without having time to make any preparation, or even to barricade the quarter deck. Terror, and above all, confuſion, were painted on their countenances. The officers bawled out as loud as they could; while the ſoldiers, all recruits, none of whom had ever loaded a muſket, knew not what to anſwer, or whom to obey; in a word, at ſeven in the evening we had not waſted a ſingle grain of powder. The privateer, in the mean time, kept up a conſtant fire; and, ordering us to ſtrike, threatened to ſink us if we carried our reſiſtance any further. Our captain in a convulſive agitation, continually cried out that he had not power to ſurrender at diſcretion; and that it would be neceſſary for that purpoſe to addreſs the Mercury, the captain of which was his commodore. The poor man had entirely loſt his ſenſes.

A freſh breeze, as if by a miracle, at length ſpringing up, the Mercury bore up to us, and aſked our captain why he did not fire. The latter replied that he waited for the orders of his ſuperior officer, and that it was the commodore's buſineſs to give the ſignal for bat-

tle;

tle; an excuſe altogether ridiculous from the mouth of a *ſeaman*, attacked by a ſmall veſſel that mounted ſixteen eight pounders, while he had thirty-two of a larger bore, ſeveral ſwivels, and three hundred men beſides the ſhip's company.

The Mercury beginning to fire, we did the ſame; and, though the former was between us and the Engliſh, we ſtill continued to diſcharge our broadſides. Our people, favoured by this diſorder, had all got intoxicated: ſome ran backwards and forwards, without knowing whither they went; ſome ſtaggered and joſtled againſt each other; while others cried, wept, and ſwore, or went to conceal themſelves in ſome ſecret corner. The chaplain himſelf, with a view no doubt to rouſe his courage, was not afraid of proceeding to the ſame exceſs. I ſaw him with a lanthorn in his hand go down to the fore magazine, which contained upwards of ten tons of gunpowder deſtined for Ceylon, and without the leaſt precaution bring up a ſufficiency to make cartridges; for it is to be remarked that none were ready prepared, nor was there ever a thought entertained of making ſuch a proviſion.

After

After baffling all our manœuvres, and piercing us on all ſides, the privateer bore away from us about eleven at night; and, though it ſoon got to a great diſtance, we ſtill continued our fire. What a glorious moment for poltroons! How they then moved about with much alertneſs, and trod the deck with a firm ſtep; raiſing their voices, and challenging the enemy whom they no longer heard! Their fear however was not as yet allayed, and no one ventured to retire to reſt. Imitating the example ſet me, I paſſed the whole night in the open air, ſtretched out upon a bag between two rows of muſkets; but I was every moment diſturbed by the calling out of the ſentinels, who were continually haunted by the noiſe of the Engliſh cannon: one may thence eaſily form an idea of the diſorder which prevailed during this affair. Next morning, when the gunners went to clean the guns, they found ſome of them filled to the mouth, and containing three charges, one above another, with as many bullets. In ſeveral of the muſkets the balls were undermoſt: and I am fully perſuaded that, without the aſſiſtance of the Mercury, we ſhould have been taken; luckily

luckily however we eſcaped after being heartily frightened. Nothing indeed but the phantom Terror could have thrown officers into ſuch a conſternation, that they ſuffered themſelves to be cannonaded for four hours without daring to return a ſingle ſhot. The Engliſh certainly muſt have believed that we had no guns, or that thoſe which they ſaw were only of wood. The leaſt reſiſtance on our part would have made them ſoon ſheer off, and without doubt they would have retired faſter than they approached.

I cannot finiſh this ſketch, which is truly worthy of the humorous pencil of Calot, without relating one circumſtance more, which provokes a ſmile even yet whilſt I am writing. Running up and down from the poop to the quarter deck, and from the quarter deck to the cabin, (for, bearing no commiſſion in the ſhip, I had neither to give nor receive orders), I obſerved the keeper of the Company's papers faithfully ſeated near the myſterious box, and ready to heave it out at the window on the ſligheſt appearance of danger. This man at leaſt was at his ſtation, but terror had fixed him there much more than duty. The former had got entire

poſſeſſion

poſſeſſion of his ſenſes: "Vaillant," cried he, "Vaillant, it is all over! Alas, my friend, "we are ruined, we are undone!" I did every thing in my power to raiſe his ſpirits, and to induce him to change his air, that he might aſſume another countenance. In the mean time a bullet came whizzing through the cabin with a horrid noiſe; and the poor man fell down motionleſs, like an unwieldy maſs. Ignorant of the cauſe, I imagined he was dead; but by little and little he raiſed himſelf up, fetching ſeveral heavy ſighs from the bottom of his breaſt. At this part of the ſcene, which was truly affecting, I could no longer keep my gravity, and I retired to give free vent to loud burſts of laughter.

Was it not ſhameful that men, formed by their condition, their age, and their experience, to give examples of bravery and honour, ſhould fail in ſo diſgraceful a manner, at a time when in a minute only they might have diſſipated every alarm, and made the paltry privateer which haraſſed us appear as nothing, whilſt, on the contrary, children ſcarcely old enough to haul in a cable, ſhewed a thouſand proofs of zeal, firmneſs,

and

and intrepidity? What chiefly raiſed my indignation, and yet diverted me at the ſame time, was, that next morning they were fully perſuaded they had ſunk the Engliſh veſſel, as it had diſappeared. I could not without murmuring hear the reciprocal compliments they paid one another on account of the gallant manner in which they had defended their veſſel the evening before. As for me, being firmly perſuaded that the enemy had not received one of our ſhot, I could not help ſhewing a little pleaſantry on the occaſion; and telling the chief pilot, Van Groenen, that he behaved worſe than any of the reſt during the action, and that he then ſhewed the greateſt ſhare of pride and vanity. The ſailors laughed in their ſleeves, and the pilot perceived it; but the greater part of them not being able in conſcience to ſtand up in his defence, he was obliged to be contented with the worthy teſtimony of his own ſelf-love. To crown the affair, Engelbregt, the ſurgeon, who during the whole action had concealed himſelf in the hold, was commiſſioned, by virtue of his office, to keep a journal of this glorious engagement. I took the liberty of rallying

rallying the writer, as I had done the reſt; but it was out of his power to be revenged, as I had the happineſs of being in good health. This however was not the caſe with the pilot; he made himſelf ample amends for my pleaſantry by rendering my ſituation as uncomfortable as he could during the remainder of the paſſage: but luckily it was not of long duration; and after this ſingular adventure we continued our voyage very happily, as we had always a fair wind. After a paſſage of three months and ten days we diſcovered the mountains of the Cape, which on account of the fineneſs of the weather made at that time a beautiful appearance. I took a view of them; and the ſame day, at three in the afternoon, we caſt anchor in Table Bay.

The port-captain, Mr. Staring, immediately came on board, and confirmed the accounts we had heard of a declaration of war, which the colony had learned from a French frigate. Next morning I went on ſhore, and took the earlieſt opportunity of paying my reſpects to thoſe gentlemen to whom I had been recommended, and of delivering my letters. I was received with much politeneſs,

neſs, and even with diſtinction. Mr. Boers the fiſcal, and Mr. Hacker, ſhewed me every poſſible mark of friendſhip; and I was ſenſible that I was not indebted for them to that ordinary politeneſs, which in other places ſubſtitutes unmeaning grimace for the noble deſire of obliging one's fellow-creature, and which is only a perfidious art employed to deceive with more facility the credulous ſincerity of a ſtranger. They offered me all thoſe ſervices which my recommendations, and their diſtinguiſhed rank, gave me a title to expect. I depended upon them; for I knew that I had to do with Dutchmen.

I was impatient to be acquainted with this new country, to which I found myſelf tranſported as if in a dream. Every thing preſented itſelf to my view in the moſt ſtriking manner; and I already meaſured with my eyes thoſe immenſe deſarts into which I was going to penetrate.

Cape Town is ſituated on the declivity of the Table and Lion Hills. It forms an amphitheatre, which extends as far as the borders of the ſea. The ſtreets, though broad, are not commodious, becauſe they are ill paved. The houſes, which are almoſt all built in an

uniform manner, are beautiful and ſpacious; but they are covered with reeds, to guard againſt thoſe accidents which might be occaſioned by heavy roofs during the time of hurricanes. The interior part of theſe houſes diſplays no marks of frivolous luxury; all the furniture is in a noble and ſimple taſte: no tapeſtries are ever ſeen in them; a few paintings and mirrors form their principal ornaments. The entrance to the city by the ſquare of the fort preſents a noble view, eſpecially as the greater part of the fine edifices have been erected there. On one ſide appears the Company's garden, in its full extent; on the other the fountains, the ſtreams of which flow down from the Table Hill through a fiſſure, which is perceived from the city and from the whole harbour. This water is excellent, and furniſhes abundance for the conſumption of the inhabitants, as well as for ſupplying ſuch veſſels as touch here.

The men appeared to me to be in general well made, and the women to be pretty. I was ſurpriſed to ſee the latter dreſs with as much attention to the minutiæ of elegance as the ladies in France; but they have neither

their

their manners nor graces. As the children are always ſuckled by female ſlaves, the familiarity which reigns between them has a great influence upon their manners and education. That of the men is ſtill more neglected; if we except the children of the great, who are ſent to Europe to be inſtructed. At the Cape, there are no other teachers of youth but writing-maſters.

Almoſt all the ladies play on the harpſichord; this is their ſole accompliſhment. They love ſinging, and are remarkably fond of dancing; on this account it is rare not to ſee ſeveral balls every week. The officers of the ſhips which touch here, and which lie ſome time in the roads, often afford them an opportunity of indulging in this pleaſure. Upon my arrival, the governor uſed to give a public ball every month, and the principal people of the town followed his example.

I was aſtoniſhed to find neither a coffee-houſe nor a tavern, in a place at which ſo many ſtrangers arrive; but one may procure lodgings in every private houſe. The uſual charge for bed and board is a dollar a day; which is dear enough, when we conſider the cheapneſs of the productions of the country. During my reſidence here butchers meat was

exceedingly cheap. I have ſeen thirteen pounds of mutton ſold for about ſixpence ſterling, an ox for twelve or fifteen rixdollars*, ten quarters of corn for fourteen or fifteen, and ſo in proportion for other things. During the war the price of every commodity was raiſed to an exorbitant degree; and in the latter part of it forty-five rixdollars were given for a wretched bag of potatoes, and above two ſhillings ſterling for a ſmall cabbage. The charge for board, however, was not increaſed.

Fiſh are very abundant at the Cape. Among thoſe moſt eſteemed, the principal are the *rooman*, a red fiſh found in the bay of Falſo; and the *klepvis*, which has no ſcales, and which is caught on the rocks bordering the ſea; the *ſteenbraaſen*, the *ſtompneus*, and ſome others. Theſe excellent fiſh make a conſpicuous figure at every good table. Oyſters are very rare here, and none are found any where but in the bay of Falſo. Eels however are ſtill more uncommon. Crayfiſh I never ſaw; but the people eat ſea ears, which are called *klepkouſen*.

* A rixdollar is about three ſhillings and nine pence ſterling.

To

To find game, one muſt go a great many leagues from the Cape. The moſt common kinds are the *ſteenbock*, the *duyker*, the *reebock*, the *gryſbock*, the *bontebock*, and all the different ſpecies of antelopes, concerning which I ſhall ſpeak more at length in my deſcription of quadrupeds. Hares, above all that ſmall ſpecies called the *down hare*, are found here in great abundance, but they have not the flavour of ours.

Partridges alſo of different kinds, ſmaller or larger, and more or leſs delicious than thoſe of Europe, are found here; but the quail and the ſnipe do not differ from ours. They are never ſeen here but in their paſſage.

Whatever the enthuſiaſts of the Cape may ſay, I am of opinion that our fruits tranſplanted thither have greatly degenerated. The grapes alone appeared to me to be delicious; cherries are ſcarce and bad; pears and apples are not much better, and ſoon ſpoil. The citrons, however, and the oranges, eſpecially that kind called *nareteyes*, are excellent: the figs are delicate and wholeſome; but the ſmall banana, or *piſang*, has a bad taſte. Is it not aſtoniſhing that in ſo fine a country, and under ſo pure a ſky, if we except a few diſmal bays,

no indigenous fruits are to be found? Aſparagus and artichokes do not grow at the Cape, but all the other productions of our kitchen-gardens in Europe ſeem to be naturalized: one might enjoy them the whole year, did not the ſouth-eaſt wind, which prevails for three months, dry the earth to ſuch a degree as to render it incapable of every kind of cultivation; it blows with ſuch fury, that it is neceſſary, in order to preſerve plants, to ſurround all the beds of a garden with cloſe paliſades made of young elms. The ſame method is purſued with reſpect to young trees; which, notwitſtanding theſe precautions, never ſhoot forth branches on the windward ſide; and always incline to the other, which gives them a diſmal appearance: in general, it is very difficult to rear them.

I have often been a witneſs to the ravages occaſioned by this wind. In the ſpace of twenty-four hours the beſt ſtocked gardens appear as if dug up, and ſwept. This wind continues from January to April at this extremity of Africa, and extends even a great way into the country. In the courſe of my travels, it has ſometimes overturned all my carriages; and no other alternative has been left

left me but to tie them to large bushes, to prevent them from being thrown topsy-turvy.

At the Cape, this wind is announced by a small white cloud, which at first attaches itself to the summit of the Table Hill, on the side next to the Devil's Hill. The air then begins to become cooler; by and by the cloud increases, and expands till it grows so large that it covers the whole top of the mountain: it is then commonly said *that the mountain has put on its peruke.* The cloud, however, advances with a rapid motion, and hovers over the city: one would then say that it was about to be inundated and buried by a deluge; but, in proportion as it approaches the bottom of the mountain, it evaporates, and appears to be reduced to nothing. The heavens continue calm and serene, without any interruption; and the mountain alone, for a short moment, has a gloomy aspect, while it is deprived by that veil of the cheering presence of the sun.

I have spent whole mornings in examining this phenomenon, without being able to comprehend the cause of it; but afterwards, when I frequented the Bay of False, on the oppo-

ſite ſide of the mountain, I have often enjoyed the pleaſure of ſeeing its commencement and progreſs. The wind at firſt announces itſelf very feebly, carrying ſlowly along with it a kind of fog, which it ſeems to detach from the ſurface of the ſea. This being accumulated, becomes condenſed by the Table Hill towards the ſouth, an obſtacle which oppoſes it in its way; and in order to overcome it, gradually rolling over itſelf, it riſes by its efforts to the ſummit, and diſplays to the town that white cloud which announces the wind, which has already blown for ſeveral hours, in the harbour and its environs, towards the face of the Table Hill.

The ordinary duration of this kind of ſtorm is three days; ſometimes it continues, without remiſſion, for a much longer ſpace of time; often, alſo, it ceaſes ſuddenly; and during the three months when it prevails, if it happen to ceaſe ſeveral times in this manner it is a ſure ſign that great ſickneſs will follow.

Though this wind is not abſolutely dangerous for ſhips, there have been more than one inſtance of its incommoding a great many.

When

When it is too impetuous, from prudence, and to avoid even the fear of an accident, they make for the open ſea; but, when it collects no fog, it is not perceived in the town, and blows only in the road. It is therefore the accumulation of the fog, which, moving forward with great velocity, occaſions theſe dreadful hurricanes. Very often it is impoſſible to croſs the ſtreets, and notwithſtanding the care and attention with which doors and windows are ſhut, the duſt penetrates even into trunks and cheſts of drawers. But, however inconvenient this wind may be, it ſtill procures great advantages to the town; it frees it from mephitic vapours, occaſioned by the filth which is naturally collected on the borders of the ſea, by that which the inhabitants throw into it, and ſtill more by the bloody remains which the Company's butchers (who uſe neither the heads, feet, nor inteſtines of the animals they kill) throw away, and leave at the doors of their ſhops; where, being collected into heaps, they become corrupted, infect the air and the inhabitants, and add ſtrength to thoſe epidemical diſeaſes too common at the Cape in the ſeaſon when the ſouth eaſt wind has not prevailed. The moſt dangerous and

dreadful diſorder here is the ſore throat. People of the ſtrongeſt conſtitutions often fall a ſacrifice to it in three or four days: it is ſo violent, that they have ſcarcely time to counteract its effects by the aſſiſtance of medicine.

The ſmall pox is another ſcourge in all the colonies here. Before the arrival of the Europeans, this diſtemper was not known; and ſince the Dutch have poſſeſſed the Cape, it has been within a hair's breadth of deſtruction. The firſt time of its appearance, more than two-thirds of the inhabitants periſhed. Its ravages, however, were ſtill more deſtructive among the Hottentots; it appeared that this malady attacked them ſooner than others; at preſent they are very much ſubject to it.

As this diſtemper was brought to the Cape by ſome veſſels from Europe, the Company's ſurgeons are always ſent to examine with the utmoſt care ſuch ſhips as arrive in the roads. On the leaſt appearance of infection, the crew are rigorouſly interdicted from having any communication with the town or its inhabitants; and an embargo is laid on the goods, no part of which, however ſmall, is ſuffered to be brought on ſhore. Were it diſcovered that a captain had found means to conceal

this

this diſorder on board of his ſhip, he and his officers would be immediately degraded, and condemned to pay a very heavy fine, if the veſſel belonged to the Company. I include the *officers*; becauſe, as each of them is obliged to anſwer for that part of the veſſel which concerns him, it would not be poſſible to conceal the infection without the knowledge and unanimous conſent of the crew. Did the ſhip belong to a foreign power, nothing could ſave it from confiſcation.

The wet ſeaſon begins generally towards the end of April; and the rains are more abundant and more frequent in the town than any where elſe in the neighbourhood; which may be accounted for in the following manner:—At the Cape the north wind produces the ſame effect as the ſouth-weſt does in France: it carries along with it the clouds, which, paſſing over the town, are ſtopped by their impulſe againſt the Table, Devil, and Lyon Hills. Continual rains prevail then at the Cape; whilſt the neighbouring parts to the diſtance of two miles around, enjoy dry weather, and a ſky perfectly ſerene. Sometimes they fall over the whole ſpace contained between Table Bay and the Bay of Falſo,

Falſo, to the eaſt of that chain of enormous mountains which extends to the very extremity of Africa; whilſt the eaſtern coaſt is clear and entirely free from clouds. This is but a faint picture of what happens on the Coromandel and Malabar coaſts; except that this phenomenon is more wonderful here, becauſe it is nearer, and much better perceived. Indeed, if two friends ſet out for the Bay of Falſo, he who purſues his route on the eaſtern ſide of the mountain, carries his umbrella with him, to defend himſelf from the rain; but he who paſſes on the weſt ſide, takes it that he may ſhelter himſelf from the beams of the ſun.

Strangers are generally well received at the Cape by thoſe who are in the Company's ſervice, and by ſome others who are private people; but the Engliſh are adored, either on account of the ſimilarity between the manners of the two nations, or of their very much affecting to be generous. It is an undoubted fact, that, whenever they arrive, every one is eager to offer them lodging. In leſs than eight days every thing becomes Engliſh in the houſe upon which they have fixed their choice; and the maſter, the miſtreſs, and even

the children, ſoon aſſume their manners. At table, for example, the knife never fails to diſcharge the office of the fork.

Of all nations, the French are the leaſt eſteemed; the citizens, above all, cannot endure them; and this hatred is often carried ſo far, that I have heard ſome of the inhabitants ſay, they had much rather be taken by the Engliſh, than owe their ſafety to the arms of the French nation. Such converſation I at firſt conſidered as exaggeration; and thought, on the contrary, that theſe people formed to themſelves an illuſion at pleaſure, to leſſen in their own eyes the merit of thoſe ſervices which France then rendered them, and to get rid privately of the burden impoſed on them by gratitude. However this may be, I am ſtill of opinion that the French would have had great cauſe to complain of this colony, had not ſome people of diſtinction, whoſe prudence checked the murmurs of the populace, made ſome amends for the injuſtice of this enmity, by thoſe obliging ſervices and eſſential ſuccours which the circumſtances of the time rendered a part of their duty. Theſe worthy men were not neglected by the French miniſtry, who honoured

one

one of them with a letter of thanks from the ſovereign. Who is there who has not had occaſion to praiſe the noble and diſintereſted behaviour of Mr. Boers, the fiſcal? and who is there who will not always preſerve the remembrance of it in his heart? For my part, I render him the pureſt and the moſt ſincere homage; and may this truth, which I cannot conceal, as much preſerve the remembrance of his name as it will offend his modeſty.

DEPARTURE FOR SALDANHA BAY.

THE news of a rupture between England and Holland, which had reached the Cape before our arrival—and thoſe ſtill more poſitive brought by us, that the enemy were exerting themſelves with the utmoſt vigilance—made us apprehend that we ſhould ſoon receive a viſit from them. Government therefore imagining that no time ought to be loſt, and that the ſhips which were lying in Table Bay ſhould immediately take ſhelter in that of

Sal-

Saldanha, where they might be in more ſafety from the Engliſh, an order was given for that purpoſe to all the captains. This event ſeeming to favour my deſigns; I propoſed to depart with the fleet; and Mr. Vangenep, who commanded the Mildelburg, having been ſo kind as to offer me the beſt accommodation on board his veſſel, and every aſſiſtance neceſſary to enable me to reap benefit from my intended reſearches, as ſoon as we ſhould arrive at the Bay, I accepted his friendſhip with equal readineſs and gratitude. Ordering my baggage, therefore, to be embarked, we ſet ſail on the 10th of May, in company with four other veſſels; and next morning came to anchor in Saldanha.

This bay extends obliquely, towards the right of its mouth, about ſeven or eight leagues; and on the left of the entrance there is a ſmall creek called *Hoetjes Bay*, in which ten or twelve ſhips of war might anchor on a very good bottom: veſſels of leſs burden might penetrate much farther, and even to the ſmall iſle of *Schaapen Eyland*, which would afford them very good ſhelter. The water found here is inferior, indeed, to that of the Cape, but during the bad monſoons it changes its

its nature and becomes excellent. The peaſants in the neighbourhood ſupply ſuch ſhips as remain in the Bay with proviſions of every kind, at a much cheaper rate than they could be procured at in the town; ſo that a veſſel from Europe, outward bound, if prevented by the ſouth-eaſt wind, which is unfavourable for reaching Table Bay, may eaſily gain that of Saldanha, and be certain of finding every kind of refreſhment in abundance. Near this place the company keep a poſt of a few men, under the command of a corporal; who, as ſoon as he perceives a veſſel in the entrance of the Bay, ſends an expreſs by land, to inform the governor.

The *cachalot**, a kind of whale which the Dutch call *noord kaaper*, is always found in great plenty ſporting in the baſon. I have often fired balls at them, when they raiſed themſelves upright above the ſurface of the water, but I never obſerved that they made the leaſt impreſſion. We found a prodigious number of rabbits in the ſmall iſle of *Schaa-*

* The *cachalot* was generally known under the name of the ſpermaceti whale, till Mr. Pennant very properly made a diſtinction, by borrowing its name from the French. T.

pen

pen Eyland: it became our warren, and was an excellent reſource for the ſeamen.

Game of all kinds is very abundant in the neighbourhood.---The principal are ſmall antelopes, and all thoſe of which I have already ſpoken. Partridges and hares are found here alſo; but the difficulty of continually mounting or deſcending among the ſands with which this place is bordered, renders it a very fatiguing and laborious taſk to purſue them. Panthers are common here, but they are leſs ferocious than thoſe of other parts of Africa; becauſe, finding a ready ſupply of food in the game, they are never tormented by hunger.

Some days after my arrival, the commander of the ſoldiers ſtationed here having invited me to go on a hunting party with him, we ſet out next morning. Though we ſaw great plenty of game, we could not catch any thing; but towards evening, having accidently ſeparated, as if fate wiſhed to familiarize me all of a ſudden to thoſe dangers which I had come ſo far in ſearch of, I received for the firſt time, a leſſon I little expected, and which I am convinced would have made more than one brave citizen ſhudder.—

der.---The ſhots which I had fired here and there having rouſed a ſmall antelope, my dog ſet out to purſue it; and ſtopping at a very large buſh, began to bark, running continually round it. Imagining that the antelope had retired thither, I ran up to it, in hopes of being able to kill it; and my preſence and voice ſeemed to add greatly to the courage of my dog. I every moment expected that the antelope would appear; but, impatient at not ſeeing it come forth, I penetrated into the heart of the thicket, beating on every ſide with my muſket, to remove the branches which intercepted my paſſage. But words can hardly expreſs the ſtupor and terror which froze the blood in my veins, when, having reached the centre of the buſh, I ſaw, ſtaring me in the face, a furious and monſtrous panther: its attitude after it perceived me, its flaming eye-balls fixed upon me, its neck ſtretched out, its jaws half extended, and its hollow roaring, all ſeemed to announce my deſtruction. I indeed already believed that I was devoured; but the cool courage of my dog ſaved my life. By keeping the animal at bay, and making him heſitate between rage and fear, I had leaſure to return

return ſoftly to the borders of the thicket; whilſt my admirable dog kept cloſe to his maſter, reſolved no doubt to periſh along with him. When I had reached plain ground, I made towards the public road as ſoon as poſſible, caſting every now and then a look behind me. Hearing at a diſtance ſeveral reports of a muſket fired, at certain intervals, I concluded that they muſt proceed from my companion, who was looking for me. As it was now night, I had no deſire to rejoin him, and I ſuffered him to fire away at his pleaſure; he however arrived, but very late. His ſurpriſe at ſeeing me perfectly ſafe and ſound, was equal to his joy; for he confeſſed that, from the manner in which my dog barked, he judged I was engaged with an hyæna, or a tyger; and that, not hearing me return an anſwer when he fired his muſket, he believed that I was torn to pieces. This adventure, which I related to him with all its particulars, made us both laugh heartily; but what he told me reſpecting the courſe I ought to have purſued in this rencontre, made me regret much that I did not fire upon the animal. Being as yet a novice in the country of theſe ferocious beaſts, this was the firſt I

THE UNITED PRESBYTERIAN MISSION LIBRARY

had ever beheld ſo near, and I was altogether ignorant how to proceed with a panther. In this manner did I amuſe my leiſure hours, and prepare myſelf inſenſibly for greater dangers.

We often went to the Iſle of Schaapen, to kill rabbits. In one of theſe excurſions, which had before afforded us much pleaſure, we had a very narrow eſcape from deſtruction. A whale roſe all of a ſudden near our boat, and filled us with great terror. It was ſo near us, that fearing leſt, when it dived again, it might overſet the boat, and ſink it by its enormous weight, the ſailors threw themſelves into the ſea; but the man at the helm turned the boat with ſo much expedition, that we eſcaped the monſter. This animal, which darted at leaſt twelve feet out of the water, beſprinkled us all when it dived; and our boat received ſuch a violent ſhock, that it was almoſt overwhelmed. Had it not been for the good conduct of our pilot, not one of us would have eſcaped death.

This whale is generally from ſixty to eighty feet long, and ſometimes more. It oft times emerges from the ſea with half its body;

body; and when this heavy maſs falls back again it makes a noiſe as loud as the report of a cannon.

One evening, while at ſupper, our veſſel received a ſhock which made her reel in ſo extraordinary a manner, that, not knowing what might be the cauſe of it, we quitted the table with great precipitation, and ran upon deck. The alarm became general throughout the crew. Vangenep believed that we had driven on our anchors, and that we were ſtriking on ſome rock; but obſerving, by the poſition of the other ſhips, that we had not moved from our place, it was concluded that ſomething elſe muſt be the cauſe of that extraordinary motion, and our conſternation became redoubled. Having in vain attempted to diſcover from what it proceeded, we at length perceived a whale, which, riſing before us, had, in diving again, paſſed between our two cables, which croſſed one another. As the animal happened to be impeded by its tail, which is exceedingly broad, the violent efforts it made to diſengage itſelf had ſhaken, and even then ſhook, our veſſel. The people immediately jumped into the boats, and ran to their harpoons; but the darkneſs of the night

unluckily prevented them from employing the neceſſary manœuvres to kill it; and the moment when the boats were approaching, it got itſelf diſentangled. Every one was vexed at this diſappointment. As for me, I regretted it much, until chance enabled me afterwards to get one into my power. When the danger was paſt, we again ſat down to table; and as a falſe alarm is always ſucceeded by the livelieſt joy, we amuſed ourſelves in jeering one another, and in reciprocally painting the different impreſſions which fear had made on each of the gueſts, without ſparing any one.

The vigilance of Vangenep, and the promtitude with which he gave his orders on this occaſion, were to me a certain evidence that he himſelf was under great uneaſineſs; but he ſuffered nothing to appear: ſo true it is that the coolneſs of a commander conceals danger, and encourages thoſe who are under him. Such ought to be the conduct of a good ſea officer, even till the laſt moment. The conſternation ſoon becomes general, when the crew obſerve any marks of terror imprinted on the countenance of their captain. I then recollected the proof which I had ſeen of this, paſſing the Line, when we ſhamefully ſuffered

ourſelves to be cannonaded by a petty privateer.

At the entrance of Saldanha Bay there is ſeen alſo a ſmall iſle, called *Daſſen Eyland*, or the Iſle of Marmots. I do not know if any of theſe animals were ever found here at any former period, but I obſerved none. A tradition known to all travellers had informed me, that a Daniſh ſhip, being prevented by contrary winds from entering the roads at the Cape, took ſhelter in this bay; and that, after remaining here ſome time, the captain happening to die, his crew buried him in this ſmall iſland, and erected a tomb to his memory.

Every time I paſſed this iſle, in order to go to *Schaapen Eyland*, my ears were aſſailed by a hollow ſound which had in it ſomething very diſmal and terrifying. Having mentioned it to my captain, he told me that, if I was deſirous, and if it would give me the leaſt pleaſure, he would land there, eſpecially as he himſelf wiſhed to ſee the Daniſh tomb. Next morning therefore he gave orders for this purpoſe, and we ſet out.

In proportion as we approached, this hollow noiſe excited our curioſity the more,

and the ſea breaking with great violence againſt the rocks which form a rampart round this iſle, ſtill added to the murmuring ſound, the cauſe of which we had not been able to diſcover.

Being at length arrived, we were obliged to wade through the water; as the ſurf was ſo violent that the boat could not approach near enough the ſhore, where we were every moment covered with the ſpray: but, having at length clambered up the rocks, with no little difficulty and danger, we beheld ſuch a ſpectacle as never, perhaps appeared to the eye of mortal. All of a ſudden there aroſe from the whole ſurface of the iſland an impenetrable cloud, which formed, at the diſtance of forty feet above our heads, an immenſe canopy, or rather a ſky, compoſed of birds of every ſpecies, and of all colours: cormorants, ſea-gulls, ſea-ſwallows, pelicans, and I believe all the winged tribe of this part of Africa, were here aſſembled. All their voices mixed together, and modified according to their different kinds, formed ſuch a horrid muſic, that I was every moment obliged to cover my head, to prevent it from

being torn to pieces, and to give a little relief to my ears.

The alarm which we ſpread was ſo much the more general among theſe innumerable legions of birds, as we principally diſturbed the females who were then ſitting. They had neſts, eggs, and young to defend. They were like furious harpies let looſe againſt us; and their cries rendered us almoſt deaf. They often flew ſo near us, that they flapped their wings in our faces; and, though we fired our pieces repeatedly, we were not able to frighten them: it ſeemed almoſt impoſſible to diſperſe this cloud. We could not move one ſtep without cruſhing either their eggs or their young ones, ſo that the earth was entirely ſtrewed with them.

The caverns and crevices of the rocks were inhabited by *phocæ* and *morſes*, a kind of ſea-calves and ſea-lions. Among others, we killed one of the latter, which was of an immenſe ſize.

The ſmaller crevices ſerved as places of retreat for penguins, which ſwarm here above every other kind. This bird, which is about two feet in length, does not carry its body in the ſame manner as others; it ſtands perpen-

dicularly on its two feet, which gives it an air of gravity, ſo much the more ridiculous, as its wings, which have no feathers, hang careleſsly down on each ſide: it never uſes them but in ſwimming. As we advanced towards the middle of the iſland, we met innumerable troops of them. Standing firm and erect on their legs, theſe animals never deranged themſelves in the leaſt to let us paſs; they more particularly ſurrounded the mauſoleum, and ſeemed as if determined to prevent us from approaching it. All the environs were entirely beſet with them. Nature had done more for the plain tomb of the poor Daniſh captain, than what the imagination of poets goes far in ſearch of, and what the chiſel of our artiſts executes at a great expence: the hideous owl, however well ſculptured in our churches, has not half ſo dead and melancholy an air as the penguin. The mournful cries of this animal, mixed with thoſe of the ſea-calf, impreſſed on my mind a kind of gloom, which diſpoſed me very much for the tender ſenſations of ſadneſs and grief. I fixed my eyes for ſome time on this laſt aſylum of an unfortunate traveller, and honoured his manes with the tribute of a

ſigh.

ſigh. This monument, erected no doubt in haſte, preſented nothing remarkable: it was of an oblong form, three feet in height; and conſtructed, without any mortar, of pieces of the rock which ſurrounds the iſland. I ſhould have been glad to ſearch the interior part of this tomb, as it perhaps contained, along with the diſmal remains of the captain, the hiſtory of his death, or ſome information reſpecting his family and country. Had I been alone, I ſhould have ventured to diſturb his aſhes; but before Dutch ſailors I was very cautious not even to propoſe it. Reſpect for the dead is among them carried to the greateſt exceſs. With an unpleaſant eye they would have beheld me lay my hands upon this ſolitary and peaceful tomb; and, as they are above all exceſſively ſuperſtitious, if any accident had afterwards befallen the ſhip, they would not have failed to aſcribe the cauſe of it to me. I therefore prudently held my tongue; but, on quitting the iſland, I privately reſerved to myſelf a right of ſome day returning to it.

We filled our boat with animals of all kinds which we had caught. The penguins were not forgotten; and we extracted abundance of oil from them for burning.

Our

Our ſailors alſo collected a prodigious quantity of eggs, which for ſeveral days ſupplied us with a nouriſhment that we found delicious and which very ſeaſonably relieved us from the neceſſity of feeding upon the dry and too uniform proviſions of the ſhip.

To this digreſſion, which I conſider as intereſting, I ſhall add a few words reſpecting the ſea-lion and the ſea-calf. They have been mentioned by a multitude of authors under denominations ſo different, and with deſcriptions ſo erroneous, that nothing can indeed be comprehended from them. With regard to the firſt of theſe monſters, I can only ſay, that I never obſerved any of thoſe trunks half a foot in length, which, as we are aſſured, hang from the upper jaw of the male. In reſpect to the ſecond, which the Dutch have thus named, it is the ſame animal as that ſhewn three or four years ago in one of the ſhops of the *Palais-Royal*, and which the people who exhibited it called a *ſea-tyger*; while another of the ſame ſpecies was ſhewn, a few doors diſtant, under a different name. It was thus that, fifteen years ago, the ſimple credulous Pariſians, who would not have gone a ſingle ſtep to ſee a camel, ran in crowds to the

the fair of St. Germain, to ſtare with wonder at the *gangan*, which was nothing elſe but a camel, thus named by an impoſtor. Such deceptions are leſs ludicrous, as they deſerve to be condemned. They tend to propagate ignorance among the indolent inhabitants of the banks of the Seine, who, when they ſacrifice their money to gratify vain curioſity, ought alſo to make it contribute towards their inſtruction.

We had been only three months in the bay, and I had already made myſelf acquainted with all the environs. I had been ſo attentive to my main object, that even in that ſhort ſpace of time I had formed a large and valuable collection of birds, ſhells, inſects, madrepores, &c. But a fatal event, which took place ſoon after, had nearly deprived me of all the fruits of my labour, my reſearches, and my fatiguing excurſions.

An expreſs which we received over land from the Governor, informed us that Mr. Suffrein, after the affair of St. Jago, had arrived at the Cape, and that another French ſquadron was hourly expected. This expreſs brought an order at the ſame time to the *Held-Woltemaade*, the veſſel which had carried

ried me from Europe, to depart immediately for Ceylon, to which place ſhe was bound. My poor old captain* ſet ſail, therefore, in the beginning of Auguſt. This unlucky ſhip purſued me every where; and I believe it was written in the book of Fate, that ſhe ſhould not depart until after having ruined me. When I reflected on our ridiculous engagement with the privateer, I plainly foreſaw that the *Held-Woltemaade* would be no ſooner perceived by the Engliſh, than ſhe would be taken; which indeed afterwards happened. Scarcely had ſhe begun to proceed on her voyage, when ſhe fell in with the ſquadron under the command of commodore Johnſtone, to which ſhe became an eaſy prey. This capture occaſioned all our ſubſequent misfortunes. Through the ſhameful imprudence of the crew, Johnſtone, having received what information he wiſhed for, made directly towards us, and appeared at the mouth of the bay under French colours. Every one believed that the veſſels they ſaw were the combined fleet which we expected; but a cutter, a little way ahead, having hoiſted an Engliſh

* Captain S——, V——.

flag,

flag, fired a broadside at us, which was followed by a general discharge from all the rest of the ships. Inferiority of number not permitting our people to maintain the conflict, no other resource was left us but to cut our cables, and to run our vessels ashore. We all, therefore, quitted them; and every one sought for safety by flight. Disorder and confusion being soon spread in every quarter, the unfortunate vessels were abandoned to the most dreadful pillage; every one endeavouring to carry off what he liked best. My captain set fire to his vessel, but the English arrived time enough to prevent the rest from being run ashore and burnt. The fear of being pursued, taken, or massacred by the enemy, made the sailors, with the utmost precipitation, pursue their way to the Cape. Twenty leagues of sand to traverse, before they could reach the town, had however discouraged many of them. These miserable people had so overloaded themselves, that they were under the necessity of leaving the half of their effects upon the road. They were seen lying every where around, and the different paths which they had taken were strewed with them. That day I was unluckily out on a hunting

hunting party; but having heard the noiſe of the cannon, I naturally concluded that ſome entertainment was given by our ſquadron; and I haſtened back to partake of it. When I arrived on the Downs, what a ſpectacle did I behold! The Mildelburg blew up, and in a moment the ſea and the ſky were filled with burning fragments. I had thus the cruel mortification of ſeeing my collections, my fortune, my projects, and all my hopes, riſe to the middle regions, and evaporate into ſmoke.

The Engliſh, however, ſtill continued to fire towards the Downs, and to purſue thoſe ſtragglers whom avarice had detained too long aboard of our veſſels. Of five priſoners, whom we had in our ſhip, four threw themſelves into the waves, on ſeeing their country's flag, and got ſafe to their own fleet; the fifth preferred going on ſhore with our people. Seeing him upon the Downs, at the diſtance of ten or twelve paces from the ſpot where I ſtood, I immediately knew him; and whilſt I was interrogating him in his own language, as well as I could, reſpecting the dreadful cataſtrophe which had taken place, a cannon bullet,

bullet, which carried off his head, prevented me from receiving a reply. Another bullet from the ſame broadſide, did the ſame thing to a large dog, which appeared to be ſearching for its maſter, and which was running up to me with a wild and terrified look. The effects produced by theſe two bullets making me apprehenſive of a third, I inſtantly quitted my ſtation, and ſought a place of ſhelter on the other ſide of the Downs.

The reader may eaſily imagine what my ſituation muſt have been after this adventure. Suppoſing that I did not chooſe to go to the Cape to beg pecuniary aſſiſtance, and to add to the number of the unhappy victims who had eſcaped from the fire and the ſword of the enemy, inſenſible to this ſcene of horror, in which I ought not to have run any riſque, ſince no advantage was to be expected from it; without title, without rank, and without commiſſion; alone, abſent from dear friends, who in imagination appeared before me; diſtant two thouſand miles from my wife, my children, and my adopted country; in wild regions, without the hopes of finding even a calm and ſafe retreat;

retreat; having no other reſources but my fuſee, ten ducats in my purſe, and the thin dreſs which I then wore—what courſe could I purſue, and what could I expect was to become of me? All theſe ideas ruſhed into my mind at once, and I felt the tears trickle down my cheeks. In this deplorable ſituation I turned my eyes towards the ſhore; but I there ſaw that the conquerors, who wer purſuing the fugitives, would have my life in their power, and with one diſcharge of their muſkets might free me from all my miſeries. That moment, therefore, I formed a barbarous wiſh, and for the firſt time found my heart ſteeled with ferocity.

Recovering however the uſe of my reaſon, and reflecting upon my youth, which preſented a conſoling ſupport in my own ſtrength, I at laſt formed my reſolution, and began to be a little eaſier reſpecting my fate.

It ſtruck me in the mind that a planter, whom I had ſeen ſeveral times in my excurſions, and who lived only at the diſtance of four leagues, would perhaps ſuffer me to reſide at his houſe till I ſhould receive aſſiſtance from my family in Europe. I repaired, therefore, to his ſolitary habitation, and requeſted his friend-

friendſhip, whilſt my misfortune was painted in my countenance. Upon hearing my requeſt, the feeling Slaber ſtretched out his arms, and, ſeizing me by the hand, introduced me to his family. Next morning I imitated the perſevering ſwallow, whoſe neſt has been deſtroyed by ſome ruthleſs hand; and, not without ſorrow, began to form a new collection.

Some days after we heard from the Cape, and learned that all the captains had been broke, except Vangenep, the only one who had blown up his ſhip; by which noble exploit I was almoſt ruined for ever.

On their departure for the bay, they were all ordered to blow up their ſhips, in caſe they ſhould be attacked in a ſituation in which they could not defend themſelves; and they had received a *hoeker*, or ſmall veſſel, which drew little water, and which could penetrate into the bay much farther than any other, to ſerve as a general magazine, where they might preſerve the ropes, ſails, and rigging, of the whole fleet. This part of the order was executed; and had the captain of the *Hoeker* ſet fire to it, as he was expreſsly commanded, he would have

thrown the Engliſh into confuſion, and perhaps reduced them to the neceſſity of abandoning our ſhips, from a want of the ropes neceſſary to carry them along with them. Being ſituated much nearer the bottom of the bay than the reſt of the ſhips, whilſt the Engliſh were keeping up a conſtant fire, and taking poſſeſſion of them, he had much more time than was neceſſary to blow up his veſſel. He not only neglected to make any diſpoſition for this purpoſe; but he quitted the veſſel, in order to ſave himſelf, on the appearance of a cutter that came to attack him: he did not even think of ſetting fire to it; and, by a contradiction almoſt inconceivable, and which ſeems nearly allied to madneſs, he burnt and reduced to aſhes a beautiful habitation, ſituated at the extremity of the bay, in a place where the water was ſo ſhallow that even boats could ſcarcely approach it. On this account he was ſued by Mr. Heufke, the proprietor, who was convinced that the captain would at leaſt be obliged to make good the damages.

Vangenep was the only captain who, upon our arrival in the bay, above all things, ſeriouſly began to make ſuch preparations as were

were indiſpenſably neceſſary for executing with rigour the general orders given to all. We had ſtuffed every part of our veſſel with tow dipped in oil, with faggots, pitch, and combuſtible ſubſtances of every kind. His brother captains were therefore the leſs pardonable, as their remaining three months idle in this bay had afforded them ſufficient leiſure to be prepared. We arrived here on the 11th of May; and it was about the middle of Auguſt when this diſaſter happened.

The officers and ſailors belonging to our ſhips, who had run to the town in a tumultuous manner, ſoon ſpread the news of our misfortune. The fiſcal, not ſeeing me return with the reſt, and hearing no news of me, made every poſſible enquiry, and at length diſcovered the retreat I had choſen. In a little time after he paid me a viſit; and I ſincerely regretted that I had ſo ſoon loſt the confidence with which he had inſpired me. I gave him an account of the diſmal ſituation to which I was reduced by the common misfortune, and of the dreadful diſtreſs into which I was plunged by the loſs of all that I poſſeſſed in the world. I told him the reſolution I had formed of remaining

with honeſt Slaber until I ſhould receive letters from my relations; and of endeavouring in the mean time to repair the loſs of my collections, and to renew my reſearches in natural hiſtory. Mr. Boers heard me very calmly, and without interrupting me.—But why cannot I here perpetuate, in letters of gold, his tender reproaches, and the preſſing invitations which he gave me to follow him? Without aſſuming any conſequence, without haughtineſs, and without the impertinent verboſity of our patrons in Europe, but with that open and ſincere goodneſs of heart which ſurveys mankind with the eye of benevolence, and always conſiders thoſe whom it protects as worthy of kindneſs—"Sir," ſaid he, when I had ended my apology, "never "forget that you have been recommended "to me. The inſtant I ſee you oppreſſed "by misfortunes, is alſo the moment when "I, in my turn, ought to merit the confi-"dence of thoſe friends who have depended "upon me: I will therefore never betray "them. My houſe, my table, and every "aſſiſtance I can give, are at your ſervice. "Reſume your courage; make new prepa-"rations; return to your original plan; and

"delay

" delay not to begin your intended travels,
" by waiting for uncertain accounts from
" Europe. I will ſupply you with whatever
" is neceſſary for all your exigencies. Ac-
" cept my offer—I muſt and I will have it
" ſo."

In ſuch affecting language did this man of ſenſibility addreſs me. A refuſal would have hurt him too much; and I accepted his kind offer. To this generous friend, therefore, was I indebted for the ineſtimable advantage of being able to begin my preparations for this expedition, to which I had long looked forward with pleaſure, and to make proviſion for the ruinous expence with which it was likely to be attended. I cannot reflect upon his kindneſs without pleaſure; and I muſt ever entertain a grateful remembrance of it. With the like ſenſations I recal to view what Mr. Hacker, the lieutenant-governor, did for me, at the different times when I viſited the Cape; and I muſt return thanks alſo to Mr. Gordon. the commander of the troops, for the ſervices he had in his power to render me, and of which he was not ſparing. His curious obſervations, publiſhed in Holland by Allaman, are eſteemed; and I confeſs that I am parti-

cularly indebted to him for a number of valuable details, which would have perhaps escaped me, had it not been for the inſtructions and advice I received from him before my departure for the interior parts of the country, into which he himſelf had made ſome journeys.

I requeſted permiſſion to paſs two or three weeks more at Saldanha, in order that I might repair, if poſſible, a part of that loſs which had been occaſioned to me by the Engliſh. As I knew not whether I ſhould afterwards have an opportunity of reviſiting that fatal ſpot, I wiſhed at leaſt to procure ſuch objects as I was well aſſured I could not find any where elſe. I knew the ground ſo well, and I had croſſed it in ſo many directions, that, I may almoſt ſay, I had nothing to do but to lay my hand upon them; for, before the tragical accident which befel our veſſels, I purchaſed a horſe, and hired a Hottentot, who conducted me to the moſt ſecret receſſes. My hoſt himſelf, as well as his two ſons, aſſiſted me greatly in my reſearches: on the leaſt ſign, they anticipated my wiſhes; and I might have almoſt ſaid that they were under my command. I never beheld theſe worthy people without

aſtoniſhment, mixed with admiration. Beſides theſe, the good Slaber had alſo three daughters, whoſe perſons and figure were really very engaging. The whole family made a noble appearance; they were all ſix feet in height.

The two weeks granted me by friendſhip, with ſo much difficulty, I improved to the beſt advantage; and my whole time was divided between ſhells, plants, and hunting: the latter, above all, which was my ruling paſſion, continually expoſed me to the greateſt dangers; and acquired me a reputation for intrepidity, which was ſpread to the diſtance of ten leagues around.

One evening, having returned very early, I found waiting for me at our houſe one of the inhabitants, named Smit, a perſon with whom I was not acquainted. He had come to requeſt our aſſiſtance againſt a panther, which, having for ſome time taken up its reſidence in that canton, carried off regularly, every night, ſome of the cattle; and, as his propoſal gave me great pleaſure, I readily agreed to it. Happy at having an opportunity of hunting this animal according to rule, I truſted I ſhould be able to revenge myſelf

for the terror which one of the ſame ſpecies had occaſioned to me in Saldanha Bay.

Having agreed to ſet out next morning, we engaged ſome young men in the neighbourhood to join us. Obſerving that they did not conſent with a good grace, I endeavoured to make the moſt timid aſhamed; and this gave a kind of ſpur to the reſt. When about to depart, we collected all the dogs we could find; each armed himſelf cap-a-pie; and, when properly equipped, we all ſeparated, as if we had been about to give an aſſault. To enjoy a few hours reſt, and prepare myſelf for the fatigues of the next day, I threw myſelf on my bed; but impatience and joy prevented me from cloſing my eye-lids. By the break of day I reached the plain, with my eſcort, where Smit and a few friends were waiting for us. We amounted in all to eighteen hunters; our dogs formed a pack of the ſame number: and we learned that a panther had carried off a ſheep during the night.

One of the barrels of my fuſee was loaded with very large ſhot, and the other with ſmall bullets; beſides this, I had a carabine loaded with balls, which was carried by my Hottentot,

tot, who followed me. The country being very open, we obſerved only a few detached buſhes here and there; but we were obliged to examine all thoſe which we found in our way with great precaution.

After ſearching above an hour, we found the ſheep, one half of which only had been devoured by the panther; and we were now certain, by this mark, that the animal was not far diſtant, and that it could not eſcape us. A few minutes after, indeed, our dogs, which till then had done nothing but range through the fields without any order, all of a ſudden collected themſelves; and, preſſing together, ruſhed forwards two hundred paces from us, to a very large buſh, where they began to bark and howl with all their might.

Diſmounting from my horſe, and running towards the buſh, I took up my ſtation upon a ſmall eminence, at the diſtance of fifty paces; but, looking behind me, I obſerved diſmay painted in the countenances of all my companions. John Slaber, one of my hoſt's ſons, a coloſſus ſix feet high, came, however, and ſtood cloſe by me; ſaying that he would rather loſe his life than deſert me. By the palpitation of his heart, and his diſordered looks,

I concluded that the poor youth depended little on his own courage, and I perceived that he had need of ſome reſolute perſon to revive his drooping ſpirits. Whatever might have been his terror, I am of opinion that he thought himſelf in more ſafety near me, than in the middle of his daſtardly companions, whom we ſaw ſtraggling through the plain, and keeping at a very reſpectful diſtance.

They had all cautioned me, in caſe I ſhould get near enough to the animal to be heard, that I ought not to cry *ſaa, ſaa*, becauſe theſe words would make the tiger furious; and that he would ſpring upon the perſon who had pronounced them ſooner than upon any of the reſt: but as I was in the open plain, and in a ſpot where I could not be encumbered, I repeatedly cried out *ſaa, ſaa*, both to encourage the dogs, and to drive the animal from its hold; but all my attempts were in vain: the animal was as much frightened as the dogs; the former not daring to come forth, nor the latter to enter the buſh. Among the dogs, however, I obſerved ſome maſtiffs, on which I might have depended, had their ſtrength been equal to their courage. My

bitch

bitch alone, the ſmalleſt in the pack, always appeared at the head of the reſt; and alone penetrated a little way into the buſh. As ſhe knew my voice, ſhe was a good deal animated, and became much fiercer on that account.

In the mean time the tiger ſet up a dreadful howling; and I every moment imagined that I ſaw him ſpringing forward. The dogs, on the leaſt motion which he made, retreated with precipitation; and ſcampered away as faſt as their legs could carry them. Some muſket ſhots, however, fired at random, at length determined the animal: he inſtantly ſtarted up: and this ſudden apparition was a ſignal for every body to decamp. John Slaber himſelf, who, formed like a Hercules, might have grappled with the animal, and ſtrangled him in his arms in a moment, became confuſed; and, being overcome by terror, fled towards the reſt, and abandoned me to my fate. I was therefore left with no other attendant but my Hottentot; and the tiger, to gain another buſh, paſſed at the diſtance of fifty paces, which gave us an opportunity of ſaluting him in his paſſage with three diſcharges of our muſkets.

The

The buſh in which he took ſhelter was much ſmaller, and neither ſo high nor ſo thick as that which he had quitted. Some traces of blood, which I obſerved, gave me reaſon to believe that I had wounded him; and the redoubled fury of the dogs convinced me that I was right in my conjecture. Part of my people then approached me; but the greater number of them had entirely diſappeared.

We haraſſed the animal for above an hour more, and fired above forty ſhots into the buſh, till at length being tired, and loſing all patience at this ſport, which produced nothing, I mounted my horſe, and with great precaution went to the ſide oppoſite to the dogs; imagining that, while his attention was engaged in defending himſelf from them, I might eaſily ſurpriſe him behind. The event ſhewed that I was not deceived: I ſoon obſerved him ſquatted down, and making uſe of his fore paws to defend himſelf from my little bitch; for ſhe approached ſo near him, continually barking, as almoſt to be within his reach. When I had taken a proper aim, I diſcharged my carabine, which I inſtantly dropped, in order that I might lay hold of my double-

double-barrelled fuzee, which I carried at the bow of my ſaddle. This precaution, however, was needleſs; the animal did not appear; and, after I had fired, I ſaw nothing more of him. Though I was certain that I had hit him, it would have been highly imprudent to penetrate immediately into the thicket. Not hearing him, I ſuppoſed that he was dangerouſly wounded; and calling out to ſuch of my brother ſportſmen as were collected together—"My friends," ſaid I, "let us all "advance towards him, in a cloſe line afront; "if he is ſtill alive, and makes his appear- "ance, our pieces, diſcharged at once, muſt "deſtroy him. What riſque can we run?" Upon hearing theſe words, they all anſwered with one voice; but their anſwer was in the negative. In ſhort, my propoſal was reliſhed by nobody. Fired with indignation at their timidity, "Friend," ſaid I to my Hottentot, who was no leſs animated than his maſter, "the animal muſt either be dead, or ex- "tremely ill. Get on horſeback, approach "in the ſame manner as I did, and endea- "vour to diſcover in what ſituation he is: "leave me to guard the entrance; and, if he "attempts to eſcape, I hope I ſhall be able to "diſpatch

" diſpatch him. We may complete the bu-
" ſineſs, without the aſſiſtance of theſe pol-
" troons." He had no ſooner entered, than he called out to me, that he perceived the tiger extended at his length, without any apparent motion; and that he believed him to be dead. That he might, however, be ſure of it, he fired one ſhot more; upon which I ran up, my whole body being agitated with gladneſs and exultation, while my courageous Hottentot ſhared in my tranſports. Joy having redoubled our ſtrength, we dragged the animal to the open plain; and, when diſplayed to view, he appeared to be of an enormous ſize. I then began to take his dimenſions with the utmoſt exactneſs: I turned him over and over again, in every direction; and examined him with the greateſt care. I ſurveyed him with a kind of pride. This was my firſt attempt; and the tiger, which was a male one, happened to be prodigiouſly large. From the extremity of his tail to the tip of his muzzle, he meaſured ſeven feet two inches; and in circumference two feet ten. I obſerved in him all the characters of the panther, ſo well deſcribed by Buffon; but in the ſettlements here he is known by no other

name

name than that of the tiger. This appellation has become prevalent; though in all this part of Africa there are no real tigers, and though there is a very great difference between theſe two animals. The Hottentots call him *garou gama*; that is to ſay, the ſpotted lion.

In general, in the ſettlements near the Cape, the panther is much more dreaded than the lion. The latter never approaches without giving warning by dreadful roarings. He himſelf gives the ſignal for defence; as if he ſhewed greater confidence in his ſtrength, or made his attack in a nobler manner. The other, on the contrary, unites treachery to ferocity; he approaches always without noiſe, glides along with great dexterity, ſeizes every advantage, and, ſpringing upon his prey, carries it off before any one ſuſpects that he is near.

I had afterwards frequent opportunities of ſeeing ſeveral of theſe animals; as well as of another ſpecies, called by the Dutch *luypar*, or leopard of the French; and a third ſpecies, ſtill ſmaller, called the *cat tyger*, and by Buffon the *oſſelot*. I ſhall ſpeak of theſe hereafter.

When

When I had finiſhed my obſervations on my panther, and had drawn a figure of him, we began to take off his ſkin; and my timid companions approached gradually, when they ſaw us quietly at work. The reader may eaſily imagine how much they were aſhamed, and what marks of confuſion were diſplayed in their countenances. Ought they not to have bluſhed before a ſtranger, who, engaged for the firſt time with a ferocious animal, had remained firm, and ſhewn more courage than they, though they had all been born and educated, as one may ſay, amidſt the monſters of Africa?

When I had flayed the animal, my Hottentot wrapped himſelf up in the ſkin; and, after ſaluting my bold fellow-hunters, we returned to our lodgings.

We marched in triumph, eſcorted by ſeveral dogs, whoſe maſters had firſt diſappeared; but they would not approach near us. The tiger's ſkin ſtruck them with great awe; and when my Hottentot, to terrify them more, turned round, making a kind of motion towards them, they retreated with as much precipitation as if the tiger had been

at

at their heels; which afforded us no ſmall diverſion.

The particulars of this expedition were ſoon ſpread abroad. Every where throughout the country I was ſaid to be a man of courage; and thoſe even who had ſo *nobly* ſupported me began to be of the ſame opinion. I was requeſted alſo by a planter, whom I did not know, and who lived at the diſtance of four leagues, to aſſiſt his ſon to deſtroy a panther, which had committed ſeveral depredations in the neighbourhood.

As I had experienced ſo much danger in my firſt attempt, I was not very fond of engaging in a ſecond. I therefore begged leave to be excuſed; being reſolved never more to expoſe myſelf to the hazard of becoming a victim to ſuch baſe deſertion. "Go," ſaid I to the meſſenger, "tell your maſter that I "did not come to this country in order to ex- "terminate the race of the tigers. I ſhould "be very ill repaid for my ſervices, ſince none "but poltroons would derive benefit from "them. If chance expoſe me to ſuch ren- "counters, I can combat alone; I want none "of your aſſiſtance, and I will lend mine to "nobody." Succeſs had thus inflated my

pride, and I imagined myſelf at leaſt a ſecond Theſeus.

I had, however, very improperly confounded people whom I did not know, with thoſe who had given me ſo much cauſe to complain of their conduct. This invitation had come from a perſon named Louis Karſte, with whom I had afterwards an opportunity of being acquainted; and I repented that I had entertained ſo much prejudice againſt his children. They convinced me that they were incapable of behaving badly in the moment of danger; and I have been a witneſs to the effects of their courage.

The time to which I had limited myſelf, when I left Mr. Boers, was now nearly elapſed; the ſeaſon proper for undertaking my journey into the interior parts of the country was rapidly approaching; and I had great preparations to make. I therefore took leave of my good friend Slaber, and of all his family, whom I quitted with regret. Being freed from every care, embarraſſment, and inquietude, I caſt my eyes towards Saldanha Bay for the laſt time, and ſet out on my return to the Cape.

RETURN FROM SALDANHA BAY TO THE CAPE.

MR. Boers was waiting for me; and as ſoon as I arrived, I took up my lodging in his houſe, where I found every thing that could flatter my wiſhes, and that friendly attention which the inſolent pride of the rich ſells at ſo dear a rate in other countries. He anticipated me with reſpect to the preparations neceſſary for my journey; and begged that I would begin to think of them. Upon this occaſion I formed a more intimate connection with Mr. Gordon, the commander of the troops, who thought my intended enterprize rather too hazardous; eſpecially at a time when the Caffres were at war with the Dutch planters, and conſequently with the Hottentots: and though he approved of my plan, he did not conceal the dangers to which I ſhould be expoſed in the execution of it. What he related concerning the riſks which he had run in attempting a like project, ſerved only to redouble my ardour: and I believed myſelf to be proof againſt all thoſe misfortunes, which he took a pleaſure in exhibting to my

view; and which, I muſt own, were far from being encouraging.

Whilſt my people were employed in preparing my baggage, I examined, with particular attention, the city and its environs.

I ſeveral times viſited the Table and Lion Mountains. Though the former, ſeen from the bay, ſeems to reach to the city, I found, however, that it was more than a league diſtant from it.

The bottom of this mountain is covered with a great number of fragments of rock; which ſeem to have once formed a part of it, and to have been afterwards detached: the baſe conſiſts of pure granite, and to the very top it appears to be alternately compoſed of horizontal ſtrata of granite and of earth. According to the meaſurement given by M. de la Caille, it riſes three thouſand ſix hundred feet above the level of the ſea. A perſon cannot aſcend it but by the deep fiſſure, through which thoſe ſtreams flow that ſupply the fountains of the town with water; and even this route is very difficult, eſpecially towards the top, where the fiſſure becomes much narrower, and riſes almoſt perpendicularly. It is neceſſary to clamber above two hours, before one

one can reach the ſummit; where there is a very extenſive plain, full of enormous rocks, heaped together in confuſion, and interſperſed with different kinds of ſhrubs. They reſemble the ruins of an immenſe city. Time and conſpiring elements ſeem to have deſtroyed their projecting parts, which gives them a very circular appearance. I have ſeen ſome pieces of quartz as round as thoſe pebbles that are often found on the ſand near the banks of rivers.

About the middle of the plain there is a muddy lake, from which thoſe ſtreams that reach the Cape flow through the fiſſure already mentioned. It is about three or four hundred paces in circumference: near it I killed a great many ſnipes. I could not diſcover whether this water was produced by a ſpring, or by the rains and the fogs; but I found that the mountain was interſected by a number of fiſſures, which, like ſo many aqueducts, in different places diſtribute the water from this baſon, and fertilize the plantations ſcattered here and there at ſome diſtance near its bottom.

The Table Mountain is frequented by vultures of that ſpecies called *perchnopteros*; but

the ſouth-eaſt wind often obliges them to quit the mountain: and it blows ſometimes with ſuch fury, that it throws them down into the ſtreets at the Cape, where they are killed with ſticks. Apes of the baboon kind, which the Dutch call *bawians*, are alſo found here. Every one knows that they are great thieves. They diſperſe themſelves over the different plantations, and climb the garden walls, in order to ſteal fruit; but not with that preparation and fine order which Kolben has made the ſubject of a childiſh and ridiculous tale. When the ſky is pure and ſerene, the Piquet Mountains, which are thirty leagues diſtant, may be ſeen from the top of the Table Mountain: notwithſtanding this diſtance, they ſeem to ſurpaſs the latter in height.

When people who for the firſt time viſit this mountain, are engaged in the hollow fiſſure of which I have ſpoken, they think themſelves attacked by a ſhower of rain: though the weather be fine, it really rains to them. This proceeds from the particles of water, which, dropping continually from the rocks above, and falling upon thoſe below, are broken by their fall, and converted into a kind of rain, which becomes the finer the

more one approaches the bottom of the mountain. This rain is always more abundant in the morning than at any other time of the day. The cauſe of this may be eaſily explained by the coolneſs and dews of the night.

In this hollow, at the diſtance of about one-third of its height from the top, there is a beautiful caſcade, where the water falls over a very broad rock. The inhabitants of the town ſometimes walk as far as this fall; and, though the way is extremely rugged, even the ladies indulge themſelves with a ſight of this charming and pictureſque ſcene, from a delightful point of view which begins in this ſpot.

It is very remarkable, that, in the warmeſt countries, the ſlaves kindle fires, in every place where they are at work, which ſerve to light their pipes, and to warm or cook their victuals. Thoſe of the Cape, who are ſent to cut wood for the uſe of their maſters' families, go in ſearch of it ſometimes to the back of the Table Mountain. In the evening, when they quit their labour, if they neglect to extinguiſh theſe fires, they inſenſibly communicate themſelves to the dry graſs and roots in the neigh-

bourhood. The flames then ſpread rapidly on every ſide, and ſoon reach deep valleys, where all the wood, both dry and green, without diſtinction, blazes forth with amazing fury; having the appearance of ſo many ſmall volcanos, connected together by ſtrings of fire. The flames riſe in clouds of different ſhades, according as the caverns have a greater or leſs depth; night comes on; and the city, the road, and the whole neighbourhood, enjoy a ſpectacle ſo much the more magnificent, as the cauſe of it is known; and people are entirely free from that great terror which ſuch a phenomenon would otherwiſe occaſion: for the height and extent of this conflagration give to the mountain a more awful appearance than the lava does to Veſuvius, when it burſts forth with the greateſt fury. I never ſaw this majeſtic illumination but once; and I can ſay that it afforded me the utmoſt pleaſure. All the inventions that might be made to direct ſhips at the diſtance of twenty leagues at ſea, would never approach this Pharos, kindled accidentally by ſome ſmall buſhes, which a thoughtleſs negro has ſuffered to catch fire.

It is impoſſible to reach the Devil's Mountain by the Table Mountain, though it is a

part

part which has been ſeparated from it at the ſummit, either by fragments ſucceſſively falling, or by earthquakes; but one may eaſily arrive at the Lion Mountain, which, like the other, is alſo a part of the Table. It is however impracticable to get to its ſummit without a rope, by which one may clamber up, though with conſiderable difficulty. From this eminence ſignals are made to ſhips at ſea. There is always ſtationed here a perſon in the Company's ſervice, whoſe buſineſs is to fire a cannon for every veſſel that he ſees; and, by a ſignal agreed on, the town knows in an inſtant whether the ſhip comes from India or Europe: but the ſame man, after he has diſtinguiſhed the veſſel's flag, is obliged to repair to the town, and give information of it to government. This employment is both laborious and cruel; for it often happens that the poor wretch muſt deſcend and go up in this manner four or five times a day, which oppreſſes him with fatigue: like many other things, it may be conſidered as a fault in the adminiſtration, againſt which every body's eyes are ſhut. The perſon whom I ſaw told me very coolly, that little notice was taken of this buſineſs: and I could eaſily believe

lieve it; for he was in a moſt deplorable ſituation. Though only thirty-five years of age, his knees and legs were become ſo ſtiff that he could not walk but with great pain.

I paid a viſit alſo to the famous eſtate of Conſtantia, behind the Table Hill. This vineyard does not perhaps produce the tenth part of the wine which is ſold under its name. At that time it belonged to Mr. Cloete. Some ſay that the firſt plants were brought hither from Burgundy, others from Madeira, and ſome from Perſia. However this may be, it is certain that this wine is delicious when drank at the Cape; that it loſes much by being tranſported; and that after five years it is worth nothing. On my arrival a *demi-haam*, that is to ſay, about twenty bottles, was ſold from thirty-five to forty piaſtres; when I departed it was worth more than an hundred.

Cloſe to Conſtantia is another vineyard, called the *Leſſer Conſtantia*; but it is only within theſe ſeven years that it has begun to be held in the ſame eſteem as the former. It has even ſometimes happened that the produce of it has been ſold for a larger ſum than that of the other, at the Company's ſales. As it

is

is ſeparated from the other only by a plain hedge, it is probable that there was formerly no difference between the wines but in the manner of preparing them.

All the ſpace contained between the Bay of Falſo and the Table Bay, abounds with country ſeats and beautiful plantations, the owners of which confine themſelves to the cultivation of pulſe, fruits, and, above all, of vines. The moſt eſteemed, and thoſe which approach neareſt to the wines of Conſtantia, are thoſe of Becker and Hendrick. The wine-merchants at the Cape can prepare them in ſuch a manner as to ſell them for real Conſtantia wine. Beſides theſe ſweet wines, other ſettlements, ſuch as the *Pearl*, *Stellemboſch*, and *Drageſtein*, produce ſome kinds of ſack, which are highly valued. A wine is alſo made here that approaches near to Rota, to which the ſame name is given, and which I have found in every reſpect as good. Thoſe who go to the Cape to purchaſe any of it, muſt apply to the planters, themſelves, in order to be well ſerved; for the merchants are cheats, who, knowing that there is no guard, ſmoke the caſks with ſulphur, and fill them up with ſpirits, to

make

make them keep as long as poſſible, in caſe they cannot get rid of them.

The ordinary wine of the country ſeldom makes its appearance at the tables of genteel people; red wines, from Bourdeaux, are thoſe generally drank; and thoſe imported in the Dutch veſſels are always preferred to the French wines, brought only in ill-conditioned caſks, in which they never keep.

The average price of this wine is a florin the bottle: it however varies according to circumſtances; I have ſeen it at three florins, and ſometimes at twelve ſous.

The beer brewed at the Cape is not much eſteemed; but that of Europe is highly valued, and a great quantity of it is conſumed. The price of it varies between twelve and twenty-four ſous the bottle. In general, there is a great ſale for liquors of every kind.

Thoſe who enter a houſe are always preſented with a *ſopi*, that is to ſay, a glaſs of rack or gin, or rather of French brandy: gin, however, is the liquor moſt uſed in the morning. Before they ſit down to table, etiquette requires alſo that they ſhould be offered a *ſopi*, or a little white wine, in which wormwood

or

or aloes have been infuſed, in order to excite an appetite.'

At table, people drink beer or wine indiſcriminately. When the deſert is finiſhed, the ladies riſe up, and retire to a neighbouring apartment, or to the landing place of the ſtairs. Pipes, tobacco, and more wine, are then brought for the gentlemen; whilſt the ladies are regaled with coffee, Rheniſh or Moſelle wine ſweetened with ſugar, and other cordials. After this they form parties at play; and, when a lucky or intereſting ſtroke takes place, it is always the ſignal, or a pretence, for a bumper extraordinary.

This manner of living is common in moſt families; with this difference, that thoſe who are not rich uſe only wines of the country. The vanity of the inhabitants in this reſpect is however very ridiculous. One day, while paſſing along the ſtreet with Mr. Boers, he made me take notice of a man who was ſitting on the ſtair before his houſe; and who, perceiving us near enough to be underſtood, called out to his ſlave, with as loud a voice as he could, to bring him ſome red wine. The fiſcal aſſured me that this man had not a ſingle drop of it in his poſſeſſion, and

and that he had not perhaps drank of it ten times in his life. On this account, when we had advanced a little farther, I turned round, and obſerved that his ſervatnt was pouring out beer to him.

The *Hout Bay*, or Wood Bay, takes its name from the bruſh wood which is found there: it produces no large trees, but only ſhrubs and buſhes. This bay, which is ſmall, and expoſed to the weſt winds, is ſurrounded with rocks. Veſſels ſeldom ſeek ſhelter in it, except they are ſuddenly overtaken by foul weather, and cannot poſſibly reach any other place. It lies two leagues to the ſouth-weſt of the Cape.

The Bay of Falſo, ſituated ſouth-eaſt of the Cape, is diſtant from it three leagues; but one muſt paſs over a ſpace equal to four, in order to arrive at the anchoring ground: the way to it is almoſt impaſſable. This ſpacious bay is capable of affording an aſylum to a conſiderable number of veſſels: it is here that thoſe ſeek ſhelter which happen to be in Table Bay when the weſt wind begins to blow; and, for a contrary reaſon, when the ſouth-eaſt begins, theſe veſſels return to their former ſtation.

The

The commander at the Bay of Falſo has the rank of an *under merchant:* his ſalary is moderate; but his place brings him a great deal, by the trade which he carries on with foreign veſſels. When he purchaſes their goods, he ſends them to the town to be reſold; and he ſometimes finds means to diſpoſe of them at five times their original value.

Cloſe to the ſhore of the bay there are a great number of warehouſes, in which proviſions are depoſited for the uſe of the Eaſt-India Company's ſhips. A very beautiful hoſpital has been likewiſe erected here for the crews, and a commodious houſe for the governor, who generally comes hither and ſpends a few days while the ſhips are lying in the bay. Commerce draws hither alſo a great number of individuals from the Cape, who furniſh the officers with lodgings. Whilſt the latter are here, the bay is extremely lively; but as ſoon as the ſeaſon permits them to heave up their anchors, it becomes a deſart; every one decamps; and its only inhabitants are a company of the garriſon, who are relieved every two months. The veſſels which arrive then, and have need of

proviſions,

proviſions, are in a diſmal ſituation; for it often happens that the warehouſes have been ſo much drained, that it is found neceſſary to bring from the town in carts whatever theſe new comers are in want of: and the carriage of them generally coſts an exorbitant price. The hire of a paltry cart is from twenty to thirty dollars a day; I have even known fifty paid for one: and it is to be obſerved, that they can make only one journey in the twenty-four hours.

The fineſt fiſh are caught here, and particularly the *rooman*, that gives its name to a rock in the neighbourhood of which it is found in great abundance. Oyſters alſo are fiſhed up here, but they are exceedingly ſcarce.

I muſt not omit to mention, that in the fields between the Bay of Falſo and the Cape Town, but eſpecially in the environs of Conſtantia and of *Niuwe-land*, is found that charming tree, called *ſilwer blaaderen**. It appears that, when Dr. Sparmann was at the Cape, this tree was not ſo abundant as at preſent; for the planters having remarked that it grew up very

* The *protea argentea* of the botaniſts.

faſt,

faſt, formed conſiderable plantations of it, which have become of great uſe to them for fewel. I obſerved that this tree was not to be met with in any other place of the colony, not even in the Nimiqua land, from which Mr. Sparmann very falſely ſuppoſes that it was brought. I can affirm that it does not grow there; and I never obſerved it in any of the other cantons into which I penetrated. For this reaſon I am of opinion that it was carried from ſome other part of Africa, or of the world; though M. Sonnerat, in his laſt voyage to the Indies, aſſures us that it is the only tree originally found at the Cape. It appears that this naturaliſt never ſaw the *mimoſa nilotica*, which is very common there, as well as a number of other ſpecies much more valuable.

The plantations of *Stellemboſch*, *Drageſtein*, *Franſche-Hoeck*, *the Pearl*, and Hottentot Holland, are different cantons, ſituated between the Cape and that great chain of mountains perceived on the eaſt. They ſupply all the reſt with fruits and wine.

Stellemboſch is a ſmall village to which ſeveral of the inhabitants of the Cape have retired, and where they cultivate their land themſelves. It has a church, a miniſter, and

a *land-roſt*, or bailiff, who has the rank of an under merchant. He is a kind of fiſcal, who judges in the firſt inſtance; but he cannot impoſe any fine above the ſum of fifty rix-dollars: when the affair is greater, it muſt be brought before the proper fiſcal.

The Franſche-Hoeck, or French Corner, is ſituated in an opening of the mountains between Stellemboſch and Drageſtein. It received its name from ſome refugees who went thither to cultivate the ground, about the end of the laſt century. The ſoil of it is good, and it produces plenty of corn and wine.—The beſt bread of all the colonies is eat here; but this is not owing to the corn being better than in any other place; it is becauſe the French method introduced by the emigrants has been ſince preſerved without alteration from father to ſon. This is all that remains of the remembrance of their ancient and cruel country. In this canton I found only one old man who ſpoke French: ſome families, however, ſtill retain their primitive names, and write them as they were written formerly. I have known here *Malherbes*, *Dutoits*, *Retifs*, *Cochers*, and ſeveral others, whoſe names are familiar in France. Beſides this, they may be diſtinguiſhed

guiſhed from the other planters, who are almoſt all fair, by their brown hair, and the dark colour of their ſkin.

Hottentot Holland is thus named, becauſe this canton, originally inhabited by the Hottentots, was firſt cultivated by the Dutch. It produces pulſe, fruit, and corn. *Stellemboſch* bounds it on the north, a chain of mountains on the eaſt, the bay of Falſo on the weſt, and on the ſouth mountains in which there are ſtill ſome inhabitants.

The firſt chain of mountains and hills obſerved from Table Bay, is named the Tyger Mountains. They are here and there interſperſed with farms, which are excellent for producing corn. All theſe hills, when ſown, preſent a noble view to the town in the time of harveſt; and, on account of their fertility, they have been called the *granary* of the colony. The back part of theſe hills is alſo covered with corn farms; and this ſpecies of cultivation extends to a great diſtance. The plantations near the Cape are generally very valuable, on account of the facility with which pulſe, fruits, eggs, milk, and all other proviſions abſolutely neceſſary, can be tranſported thither, as there is always a ſure and ready ſale

for them—an advantage which the other inhabitants do not enjoy, on account of their diſtance.

For twelve miles round the Cape, the planters no longer employ Hottentots, as they chooſe rather to purchaſe negroes, who are not ſo lazy, and on whoſe ſervices they can more depend. The Hottentots, naturally careleſs and inconſtant, often run away when they expect ſevere labour, and leave their maſters in great embarraſſment. The negroes deſert alſo, with the vain hopes of procuring their liberty; but they are ſoon taken. On ſuch occaſions they are put into the hands of the bailiff of the canton; the proprietor claims them, and, on paying a ſmall fee, they are reſtored, after receiving a ſlight correction; for there is no country in the world where ſlaves are treated with ſo much humanity as at the Cape.

The negroes of Moſambique, and thoſe of Madagaſcar, are conſidered as the beſt labourers and the moſt affectionate to their maſters. When they land at the Cape, they generally coſt from an hundred and twenty to an hundred and fifty dollars each. The Indians are more particularly ſought after, for ſerving in the houſe and in the town. Malays are alſo

ſeen

ſeen here, who are the moſt intelligent, and at the ſame time, the moſt dangerous of ſlaves. To aſſaſſinate their maſter or miſtreſs, is in their eyes but an ordinary attempt; and, in the five years which I reſided in Africa, I have ſeen this crime often repeated. They march to the ſcaffold with the utmoſt calmneſs and indifference. I heard one of theſe wretches tell Mr. Boers, that he was happy in having committed his crime; that he was well aware to what kind of death he would be condemned; but that he ardently wiſhed to ſee his life brought to a concluſion by it, as he would then ſoon return to his own country. I am aſtoniſhed that ſo violent a prejudice does not cauſe ſtill greater diſaſters.

The Creole ſlaves at the Cape are the moſt eſteemed: they are always ſold at double what is given for the reſt; and when they are acquainted with a trade, their price becomes exorbitant. A cook, for example, coſts from eight to twelve hundred rix-dollars, and others in proportion to their talents. They are all properly clothed; but they go barefooted, as a mark of ſlavery. That inſolent ſet of domeſtics called *footmen*, are not to be ſeen at the Cape; for pride and luxury have not yet

introduced thoſe idle and contemptible attendants, who in Europe line the anti-chambers of the rich, and who in their deportment exhibit every mark of impertinence.

On arriving at the Cape, one is aſtoniſhed to ſee a multitude of ſlaves as white as Europeans; but this aſtoniſhment ceaſes when it is known that the young negreſſes, if they are in the leaſt handſome, have each a ſoldier of the garriſon, with whom they may go and ſpend every Sunday in whatever manner they chooſe. Self-intereſt makes the maſters wink at the irregularity of their ſlaves, becauſe they expect to reap conſiderable profit from this licentious cohabitation.

There are ſome negreſſes, however, who are lawfully married, and negroes eſtabliſhed in buſineſs, who form one body with the citizens. Theſe are men, who, on account of their ſervices, or from ſome other motives, have been made free. The facility with which they obtained their liberty formerly, gave riſe to a multitude of abuſes; becauſe theſe people, when they grew old and infirm, or when they found themſelves deſtitute of reſources, and unable to procure a ſubſiſtance, became vagabonds and public robbers.

The

The criminals whom the government of Batavia often ſends to the Cape, in order to get rid of them, preſerve among theſe ſlaves a certain diſorder, which will always afflict them. Thoſe people, called *Bouginèes*, are Malays, all fiſhermen and harbourers of thieves: with reſpect to the latter article, their reputation is ſo well eſtabliſhed, that ſearch is always made firſt among them, when a ſlave has diſappeared, or when effects have been ſtolen.

A maſter here ſeldom puniſhes his ſlaves himſelf; he generally commits them into the hands of the fiſcal, who orders ſuch correction as they have merited to be beſtowed on them. If a maſter, however, who chooſes to puniſh his ſlave, treats him with cruelty, the latter may lodge a complaint; and if he can afterwards bring certain proof of his being again uſed in the ſame manner, the fiſcal obliges the proprietor to ſell him. Should he ſeverely wound or kill him he would be ſubjected to corporal puniſhment, or be baniſhed to the iſle of *Roben*. Theſe wiſe laws certainly do great honour to the Dutch government; but how many means are there to elude them?

The iſle of *Roben* is ſituated at the diſtance of two leagues in the ſea, oppoſite to Table

Bay, and in ſight of the city. This iſland, which takes its name from the great number of ſea-dogs found near it, is entirely flat, and of very ſmall extent. It is the *Bicetre* of the Cape. It is under the care of a corporal, who has the title of commander; and the unfortunate wretches who are confined in it muſt every day deliver a certain quantity of limeſtone, which they dig from quarries. The reſt of their time is employed in fiſhing, or in cultivating ſmall gardens, for which they receive tobacco and ſome other indulgences. One cannot ſee without aſtoniſhment in what a vigorous manner greens of every kind grow here: cauliflowers above all attain to a monſtrous ſize; and, though reared amidſt ſand, their delicacy ſtill ſurpaſſes their bulk. Small violet figs, of an exquiſite flavor, grow here alſo. The wells of this ſpot ſupply its inhabitants with water equally good as that of the Cape—a very extraordinary phenomenon in an iſland ſo ſmall, and almoſt on a level with the ſea.

I have ſeen here a great many black ſerpents four feet in length, but they are not venomous: abundance of partridges, and a ſtill greater number of quails, are likewiſe

found in this iſland. I have ſometimes killed from fifty to ſixty of theſe birds in a morning.

I muſt not here omit to mention an obſervation which concerns natural hiſtory. The quails of the iſle of Roben and thoſe of the Cape are abſolutely the ſame ſpecies, without any difference which might render my aſſertion even doubtful; yet the quails of the Cape are birds of paſſage. This fact is well known: and though the diſtance from the iſle of Roben to the continent be only two leagues, it is alſo certain that the quails there never emigrate. They are always equally abundant and found in every ſeaſon. If I add likewiſe that the quails of Europe are exactly of the ſame ſpecies as theſe, muſt we not conclude that the former do not paſs the ſea, as has been hitherto pretended? Some travellers aſſert as a truth, that they have obſerved them at ſea: but this does not decide the queſtion; for, at the diſtance of more than ſixty leagues from the coaſt, I have ſhot ſtarlings, chaffinges, linnets, and an owl. All theſe birds, which, as is well known, never paſs the ſea, had been undoubtedly driven from their courſe by ſome violent ſtorm or hurricane; and I ſhall always believe that the caſe was the ſame with thoſe quails which

have

have been met at ſea, until this part of the natural hiſtory of birds be better elucidated.

I am ſo much the more inclined to diſbelieve that quails croſs the ſea, becauſe they may go by land to Africa, and return by the ſame route. It is very probable that if thoſe of the iſle of Roben dare not venture to croſs that ſmall ſpace of ſea which ſeparates them from the coaſt, much leſs will they dare to hazard a paſſage incomparably more conſiderable. The quail is a very heavy bird; and the ſmallneſs of its wings, in proportion to the weight of its body, is no wiſe ſuited to a long and continued flight. There is ſcarcely a ſportſman who does not know by experience that, when he ſprings a quail three or four times ſucceſſively, it is impoſſible for it to fly any more; and that, overcome by fatigue, it ſuffers itſelf to be taken by the hand. The ſame thing happens to all other birds of this kind.

Beſides the quail common to Europe and Africa, there is found at the Cape a bird much ſmaller, which is alſo called a quail, but very impropely; for it has only three toes on each foot, and all directed forwards; a mark ſufficient to convince us that they ought not to be confounded. M. Sonnerat, in his *Voyage to India*, deſcribes

deſcribes a bird of the ſame kind, which he calls the *three-toed quail.* M. Desfontaines mentions alſo, in his Voyage to the Coaſts of Barbary, a like ſpecies approaching near to that of the Cape, of which it is doubtleſs a variety. I am acquainted with two others much larger, one of the iſland of Ceylon, and the other of Java: I ſhall give a deſcription of them; and I think it will be neceſſary to make a new genus of them, to form the link of connection between the quail and the French field duck *, to which it has a great reſemblance in the conformation of its toes. Government ſends every year a detachment to the iſle of Roben, to kill ſea cows and penguins, from which an oil is extracted, particularly from

* In the original *cane petiere.* This bird, in Latin called *anas pratenſis Galliæ*, according to Bomare, is peculiar to France. It is about the ſize of a pheaſant; its head reſembles that of a quail, and its bill that of a hen. It has only three toes on each foot, like the buſtard. Its head, back, and wings, are of a browniſh yellow, diverſified with black and white; its breaſt, belly, and thighs are of a paler colour, inclining to white; and its legs and feet are of an aſh colour. It is accounted very delicious eating. See a deſcription and figure of it in *Briſſon's Ornithology*, under the name of the *leſſer buſtard.* See alſo *Dictionnaire Raiſonné et Univerſel des Animaux*, under the articles *canard de prè de France*, and *cane petiere.* T.

the latter: they furniſh a great deal. At the point of Roben there is a ſmall creek, in which a veſſel might find ſhelter, if the ſouth-eaſt winds ſhould prevent her from reaching the roads at the Cape.

When I quitted Europe to travel into Africa, it was not a part of my plan to enter into any detail reſpecting the manners and cuſtoms of the inhabitants of the Cape, much leſs reſpecting the political, civil, and military forms of its government. This is a ſubject, I confeſs, which engaged the leaſt ſhare of my attention, and which I ſhould give an account of with the greateſt reluctance, even were I intereſted in doing it. I have my own reaſons for acting with this reſerve, almoſt in the ſame manner as the reader may have his for being curious; and neither the reader nor I has any occaſion to know them. However, from Kolben's reveries we may collect certain facts, which a reſidence of ten years at the Cape Town gave him an opportunity of obſerving. In this point he has not impoſed ſo much on the public as may be imagined. His book, perhaps, contains truths which do not exiſt at preſent, and which have been conſidered as fables. But manners, characters, faſhions, laws,

and

and even empires, change in the courſe of time, and exhibit variations almoſt without number. They are like the features of a countenance diſfigured by old age, and which has no reſemblance to the portrait made from it when in the bloom of youth.

The caſe is not the ſame with what this ſedentary traveller has boldly advanced reſpecting the Hottentots and their religious ceremonies. If what he deſcribes ever exiſted, the ſpirit of philoſophy, which imperiouſly hovers over Europe, muſt have a little cooled the ſcorching air of the African regions; for I obſerved there no trace of religion, nothing even that approached the idea of an avenging and rewarding ſpirit. I lived long enough with them, and among them, in the boſom of their peaceful deſarts; with theſe hardy people I have undertaken journeys to very remote parts of the country: but in no place did I perceive any thing reſembling religion, any trace of what he tells us reſpecting their legiſlation and their funerals, or of what they practiſe at the birth of their male children; and nothing, in ſhort, of what he is pleaſed to relate concerning the ridiculous and diſguſting ceremony of their marriages.

The

The reſidence of this man at the Cape is not yet forgotten. It is well known that he never quitted the town; and yet he ſpeaks with all the aſſurance of an eye witneſs. It cannot however be doubted, that, after an abode of ten years, having failed to accompliſh what he was commiſſioned to do, he found it much eaſier and more convenient to collect all the tiplers of the colony; who, treating him with deriſion, whilſt they were drinking his wine, dictated memoirs to him from tavern to tavern; tried who could relate to him the moſt abſurd and ridiculous anecdotes; and amuſed him with information until they had drained his bottles. In this manner are new diſcoveries made, and thus is the progreſs of the human mind enlarged!

JOURNEY TO THE EAST OF THE CAPE, THROUGH THE COUNTRY OF NATAL AND THAT OF CAFFRARIA.

THE different preparations for my journey being now completed, I ordered all the ſcattered proviſions to be collected. They were indeed

indeed pretty conſiderable; for in that firſt efferveſcence which tranſports the imagination beyond the ordinary bounds, I neither knew nor had ſet myſelf any limits. Reſolved, on the contrary, to proceed as far and as long as I poſſibly could, I knew not whether I ſhould ever have it in my power to return; but I wiſhed above all to guard againſt the diſagreeable diſappointment of being obliged to ſtop, through the want of things abſolutely requiſite. Even to articles, therefore, the utility of which did not ſeem to have a direct object, I omitted nothing that might be neceſſary to my preſervation in unforeſeen circumſtances; and I was always afraid that I ſhould have occaſion to reproach myſelf with ſome prejudicial neglect. The three months which I paſſed at the Cape and in the neighbourhood, after my return from Saldanha Bay, were ſcarcely ſufficient for making all theſe preparations.

I had ordered two large four-wheeled waggons to be conſtructed, which were covered with double ſail-cloth; and five large boxes, which exactly fitted the bottom of one of theſe carriages, and which could be opened without being diſplaced: over theſe was a large mattreſs, upon which I propoſed to ſleep during my

my journey, in caſe want of time or any other circumſtance ſhould prevent me from erecting tents. This mattreſs rolled back upon the laſt box, and it was there that I generally placed a cabinet or cheſt of drawers deſtined to receive inſects, butterflies, and ſuch tender objects as required great care and attention.

I had ſo perfectly ſucceeded in the conſtruction of this box; my collections were preſerved there ſo well, and they arrived in ſuch good condition, that, for the benefit of naturaliſts who ſtudy this branch, and who may be incited to undertake a like journey, I ſhall, with great pleaſure, deſcribe its form. It was about two feet and a half high, eighteen inches in depth, and as much in breadth. It was divided lengthwiſe into compartments, each containing a drawer, which roſe only three inches from the bottom. Theſe drawers placed thus vertically drew upwards, and were open below, ſo that, if violent jolts (and of theſe we had a good many) happened to detach any of the inſects from their frames, they fell to the bottom of the box into the empty ſpace of three inches, which I had reſerved, and could in no wiſe hurt thoſe that remained firm: a coat of virgin wax, two or three lines in thickneſs,

melted

melted with linſeed oil, and applied to the bottom of the box, ſtopped its pores, and by its ſmell kept at a diſtance all deſtructive vermin.

This firſt waggon, which carried almoſt my whole arſenal, we called the *maſter waggon*. The compartments of one of the five boxes already mentioned were filled with large ſquare bottles, each containing five or ſix pounds of gunpowder. This was placed there only for immediate uſe, and to ſupply the wants of the moment. My general magazine was compoſed of ſeveral ſmall barrels; and, to preſerve them from fire or moiſture, I rolled them up in ſheep's ſkins newly flayed. This covering, when once dry, was abſolutely impenetrable. Reckoning every thing, I could depend upon four or five hundred pounds of gunpowder, and two thouſand, at leaſt, of lead and tin, either unwrought or formed into ſhot and bullets. Of ſixteen fuſees I had twelve in one carriage: one of theſe, intended for large animals, ſuch as the rhinoceros, the elephant, and the hippopotamus, carried a ball that weighed a quarter of a pound. Beſides theſe I was provided with ſeveral pairs of double-barrelled piſtols, a large cimeter, and a poniard. The ſecond waggon

exhibited in caricature the moſt curious apparatus perhaps ever ſeen; but it was no leſs valuable to me on that account. It was my kitchen. What delicious and peaceable repaſts did I enjoy! and how dear to my heart the remembrance of my charming and domeſtic life ſtill is! Whenever I am preſent at thoſe dinners of ceremony and conſtraint, where languor generally preſides, the diſguſt which they occaſion conveys me ſuddenly back to the gentle noiſe of our haltings, and preſents to my imagination the moſt lively and variegated picture of my good Hottentots employed in preparing a dinner for their friend.

My kitchen utenſils were far from being conſiderable. I had a gridiron, a frying pan, two large kettles, a cauldron, a few china plates and diſhes, coffee-pots, tea-pots, cups, bowls, and ſome boilers. Theſe were almoſt all the articles which compoſed my houſehold furniture.

Beſides theſe, for my own perſon, I had provided myſelf with linen of every kind, a large ſtock of white and candied ſugar, coffee, tea, and a few pounds of chocolate.

As I conceived it would be neceſſary for me to ſupply the Hottentots who accompanied

me with tobacco and ſtrong liquors, I procured an ample abundance of the firſt article, and three caſks of the latter. I carried with me alſo a large quantity of glaſs ware, toys, and other curioſities, to exchange with the natives as occaſion might require, or to gain their friendſhip. To all theſe things belonging to my caravan, I muſt ſtill add a large and a ſmall tent, inſtruments neceſſary for repairing my waggons, and for melting lead; a jack for raiſing burdens, a quantity of nails, iron in bars and in ſmall pieces; pins, thread, needles, diſtilled liquors, &c. &c. Such was the cargo of my two carriages, which might weigh each nearly about two tons. I muſt not here forget to ſpeak of my dreſſing box, which afforded me much amuſement. Nothing could equal the aſtoniſhment which it occaſioned to the ſavages in the remote parts of the country. I always made uſe of it in their preſence; and their converſation on this ſubject has more than once prolonged my toilet, and procured me a very agreeable recreation.

My train was compoſed of thirty oxen; twenty for my two carriages, and ten more to relieve them; three hunters, nine dogs, and five Hottentots: but I afterwards conſiderably

augmented the number of my animals and attendants. That of the latter amounted ſometimes to forty. It increaſed or diminiſhed according to the heat of my kitchen; for in the boſom of the African deſarts, as in more refined countries, one meets with abundance of agreeable paraſites, whoſe countenances are ſeldom tinged with a bluſh: theſe, however, without being very burdenſome, were not entirely uſeleſs to me, and they did not diſappear when the cloth was removed.

My projected journey being known throughout all the Cape Town, when the time of my departure approached, I was ſtrongly ſolicited by ſeveral people who wiſhed to accompany me. Every one ſtrove who ſhould firſt offer his ſervices: but theſe gentlemen and I reaſoned in a very different manner. They imagined that their propoſals would afford me great joy; and they could never believe that I intended to depart alone. Such an idea appeared to them to be altogether ridiculous; whilſt I, on the contrary, conſidered it as the height of wiſdom and prudence. I had been informed that, of all the expeditions ſet on foot by government for making diſcoveries in the interior parts of Africa, not one had ſucceeded.

I knew

I knew likewiſe that a diverſity of humours and characters could never conduce to the ſame end; in a word, that concord ſo neceſſary in a hazardous and new enterprize could not be preſerved among men, where ſelf-love would make them flatter themſelves with gaining an equal ſhare in the honour of its ſucceſs. After theſe reflections, I was unwilling to expoſe myſelf to the riſk of loſing the expences of my journey, and the fruits which I expected to derive from it. I wiſhed to ſet out alone, and to be abſolute maſter of myſelf: I therefore kept firm to my purpoſe; and rejecting all theſe offers, cut ſhort every propoſal of the kind that was made to me. When my equipage was entirely ready, I took leave of my friends, and on the 18th of December 1781, at nine in the morning, I departed, eſcorting my convoy, myſelf on horſeback. I did not intend to make a long march. According to the plan which I had laid down, I directed my courſe towards Hottentot Holland; and I ſtopped about evening at the bottom of thoſe mountains by which it is bounded on the eaſt ſide of the Cape.

Being then entirely abandoned to myſelf, and expecting no ſupport or aſſiſtance but from my own arm, I returned, as I may ſay,

to the primitive ſtate of man; and breathed, for the firſt time in my life, the delicious and pure air of liberty.

I was now obliged to ſubject my operations, as well as my people, to ſome order; for every thing depended on my commencement. Without being a deep philoſopher, I was ſufficiently acquainted with mankind to know that thoſe who wiſh to be obeyed, muſt preſcribe laws; and that, unleſs they are firm and vigilant over their actions, they can never flatter themſelves with being able to rule thoſe who are under them. I had to fear, every moment, that I ſhould be abandoned by my attendants, or that my weakneſs would lead them into diſorder. Without affectation, therefore, I purſued a prudent courſe, which I always followed afterwards; and no circumſtance whatever made me relax, even for a ſingle day, in my uſeful ſeverity.

We had ſcarcely halted, when I gave orders for the cattle to be unyoked in my preſence; and I ſent my oxen to feed, under the care of two of my people, in whom I had obſerved more punctuality and intelligence. With the reſt, I reviewed my carriages and effects, in order to ſee that nothing was deranged.

ranged. I even examined the wheels and the harneſs; and I diſtributed to each his employment; and addreſſed them all, in a ſhort ſpeech, reſpecting the different occupations which would be afterwards aſſigned to them. This procedure immediately inſpired them with an idea that I was a careful and prudent man, and that the leaſt remiſſneſs in their ſervice could not eſcape me. After this ceremony, I mounted my horſe, and went to reconnoitre the road on the mountain, which we were to traverſe next day. On my return, I found my oxen in excellent condition, and a large fire burning, which I had ordered to be kindled. Having made a ſlight ſupper on the proviſions which we had brought from the town, we retired to reſt; I in my carriage, and my Hottentots under the canopy of heaven.

Next morning we yoked our oxen before day, and prepared ourſelves for attempting the mountain; but we could not reach its ſummit without being in great danger of breaking our carriages, and laming our oxen. The road is cut out even, on the back part of it; but it is ſo ſteep, and ſo rough with ſplinters of rock, that I am aſtoniſhed government

ſhould have ſo much neglected the only route by which the inhabitants of theſe cantons can go to the Cape. On the top of the mountain there is a noble and moſt extenſive proſpect, including all the plantations ſcattered throughout a vaſt valley, encloſed by a chain of other mountains, and the ſea.

We were here obliged to unyoke our oxen, to ſuffer them to take breath, and to give them ſome hours repoſe. Uneaſy reſpecting the deſcent, and deſirous to know the ſafeſt method of gaining the plain country, I employed this ſhort interval in taking a ſurvey of the neighbourhood. Having obſerved that a gradual and gentle declivity on the back of the mountain would conduct us, without danger, to that charming country, I was entirely freed from my embarraſſment; and returning ſoon after to my caravan, we reſumed our march. The road, indeed, was very convenient for our carriages, and did not in the leaſt impede their motion: we deſcended, therefore, with a pleaſure and tranquillity equal to the pain and inquietude which we had felt on the other ſide. As ſavage animals ſeldom make their appearance in theſe cantons, having nothing to fear, and no precautions to take, we

continued our march till ten at night, and arrived at the river *Palmit*, thus named by the Dutch, on account of the great quantity of reeds which grow on its banks.

When we awoke next morning, we ſought for our oxen, but in vain; they had all diſappeared: not being yet accuſtomed to lie down by our carriages during the night, they had diſperſed themſelves on all ſides. My people, however, went in queſt of them; but it was a long time before they could get them collected together, and we were not in a condition to depart before nine. About eleven, obſerving a plantation at the diſtance of fifty paces from me, I advanced towards it; when the owner, who doubtleſs had ſeen my caravan, came to meet me. As ſoon as he perceived me, he made himſelf known; and I found that he was the ſame perſon who, at the Cape, had ſold me my *maſter waggon*, with the five pair of oxen that drew it. On this occaſion, I could not help ſtopping and accepting a dinner, which he offered me in the moſt preſſing manner: I complied with his requeſt eſpecially, when he confeſſed to me, that, having learned at the Cape the day of my departure, and the route I intended to purſue, he had taken

taken the ſtart of me with his people, and made preparations to entertain me at his houſe. I ordered my oxen to be unyoked on the ſpot where he had met me; and going along with him, was received very politely by his wife and two pretty daughters, who compoſed his whole family. Till the hour of dinner, we employed our time in viewing his eſtate; and, during our repaſt, he did not fail to enlarge upon the excellence of the waggon which I had purchaſed from him. I was even obliged to liſten to a long hiſtory, in which he recited all the good qualities of each of the oxen that drew it. I muſt, indeed, do him the juſtice to ſay that he did not deceive me: I have ſince found, and, I muſt allow, much to Mr. Smit's honour, that theſe oxen were the beſt I ever employed, and the moſt to be depended upon; and that, in my extraordinary courſes, and the moſt dangerous paſſes, his waggon, ſolidly conſtructed, held out to the very laſt.

Notwithſtanding the entreaties of this good family, who invited me to ſpend the night with them, I departed as ſoon as we had dined; and, after ſome hours march, we croſſed the river *Bot*, and the whole canton called

called *Ouwe-Hoeck*. I wiſhed to make up for the time I had loſt at dinner; and, on that account, it was eleven at night when we halted, near a ſmall pond of brackiſh water.

Scarcely had the ſun appeared above the horizon, when we proceeded on our journey; and, in the morning, we ſtopped at the houſe of Francis Bathenos, who ſent me a loaf which I requeſted from him, and for which he refuſed payment. He ſent to requeſt that I would alight; but I refuſed, not wiſhing in any manner to loſe my time in paying viſits. In this country I every moment met with prodigious flocks of that kind of antelopes which the planters call *reebock:* it is as yet very little known: Mr. Sparmann only makes mention of it; and the name of this animal, in the French edition of his work, is badly tranſlated; for *reebock* does not ſignify *red goat*, but *goat of the ſea ſhore*.—The noon-tide heat became ſo exceſſive, that I was obliged to ſtop; and, whilſt my people and cattle were breathing a little, I made a ſmall excurſion, in which I killed one of theſe reebocks: it was a male; its colour, in general, was a delicate grey, darker upon the back than the

the ſides, and its belly was white: it was not abſolutely reddiſh, nor were its horns more than five or ſix inches in length. Doctor Sparmann, who ſays he deſcribes them only from memory, muſt have been deceived, when he gives them a foot in length. The deſcription and figure of this antelope will be found in my Account of the Quadrupedes of Africa. In returning to my people, we ſtopped a little time, to eat a few ſteaks from the animal I had killed; and, in the ſpace of four leagues, which we travelled, in order to find a convenient ſpot for encamping, we ſaw near us, on all ſides, flocks of antelopes, bontebocks*, and bubales†, together with ſome zebras, &c. &c. and ſeveral oſtriches. The variety and gait of theſe large flocks were very amuſing, and worthy of engaging the attention of a naturaliſt. My dogs purſued with great keenneſs all theſe different ſpecies, which croſſed each other as they fled, and ſometimes found themſelves all promiſcuouſly collected into one body, according as the dogs attacked them. This confuſion, like the machinery of

* The *antilope ſcripta* of Mr. Pallas.

† The *antilope bubalis*.

the

the ſtage, ſcarcely required a moment to be remedied; I recalled my dogs, and each individual inſtantly returned to its flock, which kept at a certain diſtance from the reſt. This ſpectacle will be more eaſily conceived, if one thinks of the month of May in Holland: nothing is then to be ſeen but innumerable flocks of cattle, ſeparated from each other with a kind of ſymmetry, and which are never confounded together. Theſe animals were ſo full of curioſity, and ſo tame, that, had it not been for my dogs, I might have killed a great number of them from my carriage; but the approach of my dogs put them all to flight.

A curioſity equally familiar ſeems to characterize all animals with horns, and particularly antelopes; there were none but zebras and oſtriches which kept at a great diſtance.

Being only four or five leagues from ſome warm baths, much boaſted of by the inhabitants of the Cape, I was deſirous of ſeeing them; though I was, at the ſame time, afraid that my journey would be retarded. To gain on the one hand what I was about to loſe on the other, I departed earlier than uſual; and at ten in the morning we found ourſelves cloſe to them. This ſpring of warm mineral

water, diſtant from the Cape about thirty leagues, is generally held in great eſtimation. Government have cauſed a very ſpacious and convenient building to be erected here, for the uſe of ſuch invalids as may be deſirous of bathing: their lodging, indeed, coſts them nothing; but theſe invalids are obliged to furniſh their own neceſſaries, which is not eaſily done in a country that affords very few reſources. In this place there are two ſeparate baths, one for the blacks, and another for the whites. Near this alſo is ſituated that mountain, called the Tower of Babel, the height of which has been ſo much exaggerated by Kolben: it is far from approaching that of the Table Mount. Around this place, the company, under the auſpices of a corporal, have eſtabliſhed ſeveral repoſitories, where they feed all thoſe cattle that are neceſſary for ſupplying their veſſels with proviſions.

Next morning I paſſed the river *Steenbock*, not far from which is a beautiful ſeat belonging to a widow named Wiſſel; and after dinner, before I croſſed a ſecond river called Sonder End, I ſaw in my way the *Zicken-Huys*. This is a repoſitory or rather hoſpital for the diſeaſed oxen belonging to the company: they

are

are here cured ſometimes; but this eſtabliſhment is attended with one utility, which is that theſe animals cannot convey their infection to thoſe that are well, and which are ſeparated from them.

I had reſolved to travel during the whole night; but I was obliged to halt at nine in the evening, in the valley of *Soete-Melck*, as a boggy marſh impeded us in our way: it would not have been prudent to entangle ourſelves in it whilſt it was dark.

Early in the morning I obſerved at a little diſtance a beautiful houſe, which was a poſt belonging to the company, and commanded by Mr. Martines. As I was acquainted with him, having been ſeveral times in his company at the fiſcal's houſe at the Cape, I paid him a viſit. Like all the reſt of the planters, he invited me to ſpend a few days with him; but my impatience to proceed on my journey made me reject his kind offer. About noon I paſſed near a ſmall horde of Hottentots, who appeared to me ſo miſerable and wretched, that I gave them a few preſents. I found no cattle of any kind among them; they ſubſiſted entirely by what they could procure for their labour in the neighbouring plantations. I invited

vited ſeveral of them to follow me, and promiſed to pay them well on their return; but they could not be prevailed on, until I had aſſured them that I would give them a quantity of tobacco, ſufficient to ſerve them on the road. They then promiſed that they would be at my ſervice.—Having paſſed the night at *Tiger-Hoec*, or the tigers corner, I waited for my recruits till nine in the morning; but at the moment when I began to deſpair of them, and to think of continuing my journey, they arrived, to the number of three, with their arms and baggage. This ſmall reinforcement gave me great pleaſure: they mixed with the reſt; and, having ſoon got acquainted, I put off my departure till the afternoon, reſolving in the mean time to make a little tour in the neighbourhood. One of the new comers aſked permiſſion to follow me, aſſuring me that he was an excellent huntſman; but as I had carried with me from Europe that prejudice which people generally have againſt thoſe who ſound their own praiſes, I had no great confidence in the talents of my Hottentot. I however ordered a fuſee to be given to him; and we ſet out together.

We

We ſoon ſaw ſome flocks of antelopes, with which the whole country was covered, but they always kept out of our reach: at length, after a good deal of running, my hunter ſtopping all of a ſudden, called out to me that he perceived a *blaw-bock*, a blue goat, ſquatted down. I immediately turned my eyes towards the place which he pointed out, but I obſerved nothing. He then begged me to remain quiet, and not to move, aſſuring me that he would ſoon put me in poſſeſſion of the animal. He immediately made a turn round, creeping on his knees, whilſt I watched him cloſely; but I could not comprehend the meaning of this ſtratagem, which to me was entirely new. Soon after the animal roſe up, and began to browſe quietly, without removing from the place. I at firſt took it for a white horſe; for from the place in which I ſtood it appeared to me to be wholly of that colour, having never before that period ſeen an antelope of this ſpecies: but I was ſoon undeceived when I obſerved its horns. My Hottentot in the mean time continued to drag himſelf along on his belly; and approaching quickly near enough to take aim, fired at it, upon which it inſtantly fell.—I was ſo overjoyed that I made only one ſtep

to the place; and I had the pleaſure of contemplating at my leiſure the moſt curious and beautiful ſpecies of antelope that Africa produces. For this ſervice I aſſured my Hottentot that I would reward him generouſly when I returned to our encampment. The intelligence of this man, and the various methods he employed to ſurpriſe the animal rendered his ſervice of great value and importance: on this account I reſolved to gain him over by all thoſe allurements which ſeduce the Hottentots. I began by giving him a large proviſion of tobacco; and to this preſent I added ſome tinder, a tinder-box, and one of my beſt knives: he immediately made uſe of the latter, and began to flay the animal with the ſame dexterity as he had fired. The ſkin I carefully preſerved.

This antelope has been deſcribed by Pennant under the name of the *blue antelope*, and by Buffon under that of the *tſeiran*. The latter has given the figure of a part of its horns: it is rare, and very little known. During my reſidence in Africa, I never ſaw but two of theſe antelopes, and another which was brought to the governor ſome years before, when I lived at the Cape Town. Theſe, as well as mine, came from the valley of *Soete-Melk*, the only

only canton which they inhabit. I was assured that I should see some of them in the country of the great Nimiquas; but notwithstanding this information, and all my researches, I found myself disappointed: all the savages affirmed that they were not acquainted with them. I was assured also that the female had horns as well as the male; but I can say nothing on that head, since the three which I saw were all of the same kind.

The principal colour of this animal is a faint blue, inclining to grey; but the belly and the interior part of the legs, throughout their whole length, are as white as snow; the head, above all, is beautifully spotted with white.

I did not observe, as Dr. Sparmann says, that this antelope when alive resembles blue velvet, and that when dead the skin changes its colour; living or dead it appeared to me always alike. The tints of that which I brought with me never varied. I saw another at Amsterdam, which had been kept for more than fifteen years. The case was the same with regard to that belonging to the governor of the Cape: it was still fresher than mine, but in other respects they were equal. I can-

not help adding here, that I never found this animal properly repreſented in any of the engravings or figures which I have hitherto ſeen of it. In my deſcription of African quadrupedes, I ſhall give one from a drawing which I made of this upon the ſpot, before it was ſkinned.

Next morning, the weather being cool and cloudy, we marched ſix hours in order to reach the borders of a very large pond abounding with ſmall tortoiſes, of which we caught about twenty; we broiled them all in the ſame manner on the coals, and found them excellent. They were from ſeven to eight inches in length, and about four in breadth. The ſhell on the back was of a whitiſh grey colour, inclining a little to yellow: when alive, they had a diſagreeable ſmell; but by roaſting them it was entirely deſtroyed.

It is very remarkable that, when the waters are dried up by exceſſive heat, the tortoiſes, which always ſeek for moiſture, bury themſelves under the earth in proportion as the ſurface of it becomes dry; to find them, it is then ſufficient to dig to a conſiderable depth, in the ſpot where they have concealed themſelves. They generally remain as if aſleep; and never awaken,

awaken, or make their appearance, until the rainy ſeaſon has ſupplied the ponds and ſmall lakes with water, on the borders of which they depoſit their eggs, where they continue expoſed to the air; they are as large as thoſe of a pigeon: they leave to the heat and the ſun the care of hatching them. Theſe eggs have an excellent taſte; the white, which never becomes hard by the force of fire, preſerves the tranſparency of a blueiſh jelly.

I do not know whether this inſtinct be common to every ſpecies of water tortoiſes, and whether they all employ the ſame means; but this I can aſſert, that every time, during the great droughts, when I wiſhed to procure any of them, by digging in thoſe places where there had been water, I always found as many as I had occaſion for.

This method of fiſhing, or whatever elſe it may be called, was not new to me: for at Surinam a ſtratagem of the ſame kind is employed to catch two ſpecies of fiſh, which bury themſelves alſo; and which are called, one the *varappe*, and the other the *gorret* or the *kevikwi*.

Our waggons being ſtationed on the banks of this pond, frightened a great number of an-

telopes which were coming to drink, and prevented them from approaching us.

The bontebocks, above all, appeared in flocks of two thouſand at leaſt. I am perſuaded that this day, including bubales, antelopes of all kinds, zebras, and oſtriches, I had before my eyes ot one time more than four or five thouſand animals: of all theſe, however, I wiſhed only for an oſtrich; but I could find no method of gratifying my deſire, for theſe birds would not ſuffer us to approach them. The other ſpecies, though rather timid, were from time to time within reach of a ſhot; but I was unwilling to fire for the mere pleaſure of deſtroying them: we had abundance of proviſions; and my powder, beſides, was too valuable.

Between us and Swellendam we had now only two rivers: *Breede-Rivier*, the broad river; and *Klip-Rivier*, or the river of flints. I was extremely deſirous of being acquainted with this ſpot, which is the principal place of the colony: I propoſed to ſpend a few days in it, and to ſurvey all theſe animals attentively at my leiſure. We arrived there the day following, very early.

Of

Of all the rivers which we had croſſed, the moſt conſiderable were Diep-Rivier and Breede-Rivier. The reſt are ſcarcely rivulets, during the great heats; but in the rainy ſeaſon they are ſoon converted into impetuous torrents, which cut off all communication with the Cape Town.

At Swellendam I remained ſeveral days with Mr. Ryneveld, the bailiff of the place, who treated me with great civility and politeneſs. Finding my two carriages overloaded, and too heavy, I was ſenſible that it would be neceſſary for me to procure a third. My hoſt was kind enough to order one with two wheels to be conſtructed for me; and, when I departed, he ſupplied me with a large quantity of freſh proviſions.

I recruited a few more Hottentots; and I purchaſed ſeveral oxen and goats; together with a cow, to afford me milk; and a cock, which I intended to be my natural alarum in the morning.

There is not a ſingle naturaliſt, nor even a clown, in the country, who does not know that a cock crows regularly during night at the ſame hour, and that he takes care to proclaim the return of day.

I muſt here obſerve that ſome have pretended, in more than one public paper, to ridicule this precaution (which procured me pleaſure, if it did not afford me a reſource in the moment of neceſſity), by making me utter abſurd ſpeeches, which agree very ill with the emphaſis of the narrator. When they aſſured the public that I expected to ſupply by a cock the place of my watch, ſhould it happen to be deranged, they ought alſo to have informed the incredulous, at leaſt, in what manner a cock can ever become a watch. In the ſame ſtyle it has been ſaid, that, meeting a lion for the firſt time, "*we meaſured each other with a* "*haughty look*, and ſuffered each other to paſs "quietly; both ſatisfied with our noble coun- "tenances."

But leaving theſe poetical romances, I can ſay that my hopes in my cock were not diſappointed. This animal, which always rooſted either on my tent or my waggon, regularly announced to me the appearance of aurora. He ſoon grew tame; never quitted the neighbourhood of my camp; and, if the want of food induced him to go any diſtance, he always returned on the approach of night.

Some-

Sometimes he was purſued by ſmall quadrupedes of the weaſel or polecat kind; and I have ſeen him, half flying and half running, retreat towards us, making as loud a noiſe as he could: but on ſuch occaſions ſome of my people or dogs never failed to go ſpeedily to his aſſiſtance.

An animal that rendered me more eſſential ſervices; which, by its uſeful preſence, ſuſpended and even diſſipated certain bitter and diſagreeable reflections that occurred to my mind; which, by its ſimple and ſtriking inſtinct, ſeemed to anticipate my efforts; and which comforted me in my languor---was an ape, of that kind ſo common at the Cape, under the name of *bawians*. As it was extremely familiar, and attached itſelf to me in a particular manner, I made it my taſter. When we found any fruit or roots unknown to my Hottentots, we never touched them until my dear Kees had firſt taſted them; if it refuſed them, we judged them to be either diſagreeable or dangerous, and threw them away.

An ape has one peculiarity which diſtinguiſhes it from all other animals, and brings it very near to man. It has received from nature an equal ſhare of greedineſs and curioſity; though

though deſtitute of appetite, it taſtes without neceſſity every kind of food that is offered to it; and always lays its paw upon every thing that it finds within its reach.

There was another quality in Kees which I valued ſtill more. He was my beſt guardian; and, whether by night or by day, he inſtantly awoke on the leaſt ſign of danger. By his cries, and other expreſſions of fear, we were always informed of the approach of an enemy before my dogs could diſcover it: they were ſo accuſtomed to his voice, that they ſlept in perfect ſecurity, and never went the rounds; on which account I was extremely angry, fearing that I ſhould no longer find that indiſpenſable aſſiſtance which I had a right to expect, if any diſorder or fatal accident ſhould deprive me of my faithful guardian. However, when he had once given the alarm, they all ſtopped to watch the ſignal; and on the leaſt motion of his eyes, or ſhaking of his head, I have ſeen them all ruſh forwards, and ſcamper away in that quarter to which they obſerved his looks directed.

I often carried him along with me in my hunting excurſions; during which he would amuſe himſelf in climbing up trees, in order to ſearch for gum, which he was remarkably fond of.

of. Sometimes he discovered honey in the crevices of rocks, or in hollow trees; but when he found nothing, when fatigue and exercise had whetted his appetite, and when he began to be seriously oppressed by hunger, a scene took place which to me appeared extremely comic. When he could not find gum and honey, he searched for roots, and ate them with much relish; especially one of a particular species, which, unfortunately for me, I found excellent and very refreshing, and which I greatly wished to partake of. But Kees was very cunning: when he found any of this root, if I was not near him to claim my part, he made great haste to devour it, having his eyes all the time directed towards me. By the distance I had to go before I could approach him, he judged of the time that he had to eat it alone; and I indeed arrived too late. Sometimes, however, when he was deceived in his calculation, and when I came upon him sooner than he expected, he instantly endeavoured to conceal the morsels from me: but, by means of a blow well applied, I obliged him to restore the theft; and in my turn becoming master of the envied prey, he was obliged to receive laws from the stronger party. Kees entertained

tained no hatred or rancour; and I eaſily made him comprehend how deteſtable that baſe ſelfiſhneſs was, of which he had ſet me an example.

To tear up theſe roots, he purſued a very ingenious method, which afforded me much amuſement. He laid hold of the tuft of leaves with his teeth; and preſſing his fore paws firmly againſt the earth, and drawing his head backwards, the root generally followed: when this method, which required conſiderable force, did not ſucceed, he ſeized the tuft as before, as cloſe to the earth as he could; then throwing his heels over his head, the root always yielded to the jerk which he gave it. In our marches, when he found himſelf tired, he got upon the back of one of my dogs, which had the complaiſance to carry him for whole hours together: one only, which was larger and ſtronger than the reſt, ought to have ſerved him for this purpoſe; but the cunning animal well knew how to avoid this drudgery. The moment he perceived Kees on his ſhoulders, he remained motionleſs, and ſuffered the caravan to paſs on without ever ſtirring from the ſpot. The timorous Kees ſtill perſiſted; but as ſoon as he began to loſe ſight of us, he was

obliged to diſmount: and both he and the dog ran with all their might to overtake us. For fear of being ſurpriſed, the dog dexterouſly ſuffered him to get before him, and watched him with great attention. In ſhort, he had acquired an aſcendancy over my whole pack, for which he was perhaps indebted to the ſuperiority of his inſtinct; for among animals, as among men, addreſs often gets the better of ſtrength. While at his meals, Kees could not endure gueſts; if any of the dogs approached too near him at that time, he gave them a hearty blow, which theſe poltroons never returned, but ſcampered away as faſt as they could.

It appeared to me extremely ſingular, and I could not account for it, that, next to the ſerpent, the animal which he moſt dreaded was one of his own ſpecies: whether it was that he was ſenſible that his being tamed had deprived him of great part of his faculties, and that fear had got poſſeſſion of his ſenſes; or that he was jealous, and dreaded a rivalſhip in my friendſhip. It would have been very eaſy for me to catch wild ones, and to tame them; but I never thought of it. I had given Kees a place in my heart, which no other after him could occupy; and I ſufficiently teſtified how far

far he might depend on my conſtancy. Sometimes he heard others of the ſame ſpecies making a noiſe in the mountains; and, notwithſtanding his terror, he thought proper, I know not for what reaſon, to reply to them. When they heard his voice, they approached: but, as ſoon as he perceived any of them, he fled with horrible cries; and, running between our legs, implored the protection of every body, while his limbs quivered through fear. We found it no eaſy matter to calm him; but he gradually reſumed, after ſome time, his natural tranquillity. He was very much addicted to thieving, a fault common to almoſt all domeſtic animals; but in Kees it was diſguiſed into a talent, the ingenious efforts of which I admired. Notwithſtanding all the correction beſtowed upon him by my people, who took the matter ſeriouſly, he was never amended. He knew perfectly well how to untie the ropes of a baſket, to take proviſions from it; and above all, milk, of which he was remarkably fond: more than once he has made me go without any. I often beat him pretty ſeverely myſelf; but, when he eſcaped from me, he did not appear at my tent till towards night.

On theſe details I have dwelt with great pleaſure; and if they are nothing to the progreſs of human knowledge, they are a great deal for my ſimple and ingenuous heart. They recal to my memory very agreeable amuſements; hours of ſerenity and peace, and the only moments of my life in which I have known the full value of exiſtence. During the whole time that I reſided at Swellendam, I made a ſuitable return to the tender cares of my hoſt by the moſt lively teſtimonies of gratitude: but this was not the manner of life that ſuited my humour; and as ſoon as my two-wheeled waggon was finiſhed, I packed up my kitchen furniture and my other effects, and ſet out, without delay, on the 12th of January 1782. According to the information I had received, I directed my courſe always along the eaſtern coaſt, keeping at a certain diſtance from the ſea. The corn farms do not extend further in this quarter: the moderate price of grain is not an equivalent for the difficulty of tranſporting it to the town.

Two leagues from this place I paſſed a ſmall river, named *Bufflias*; and after two days march we arrived at a wood called the Grandfather's wood. Whilſt I was making prepara-

tions

tions for ſpending twenty-four hours in this wood, which I wiſhed to traverſe, and was counting my dogs, I perceived that one was miſſing, which was a favourite bitch, named *Roſetta*. Her abſence embarraſſed me very much: it was a real loſs, that reduced my pack almoſt to nothing; and deprived me of my favourite, which on her part loved me much. Having aſked one of my people if any of them had obſerved her on the road, one of them aſſured me that he had given her ſome food, but in the morning. After a fruitleſs ſearch of an hour or two, I made my people diſperſe, and call her on all ſides: I alſo ordered ſome fuſees to be fired; that the reports, if they reached her, might direct her what courſe to purſue. But as all this did not ſucceed, I cauſed one of my Hottentots to get on horſeback, bidding him return the ſame way we had come, and bring her back to me whatever it might coſt. After four hours I had the pleaſure of ſeeing my meſſenger arrive full gallop, carrying before him, on the bow of his ſaddle, a chair and a large pannier. Roſetta ran before him; and leaping upon me, almoſt oppreſſed me with her careſſes. My Hottentot told me that he had found her at the diſtance of two leagues from the

place

place where we halted, ſitting upon the road, cloſe to a chair and a baſket, which had got looſe from our baggage without being perceived. I had heard many circumſtances, no leſs extraordinary than this, related of the fidelity of dogs; but I had never before been a witneſs to an inſtance of it. I confeſs that the account given me by my meſſenger affected me ſo much, that I ſhed tears. I again careſſed the poor animal; and this mark of attachment which ſhe had given, endeared her ſtill more to me. Had ſhe not been found, ſhe muſt have periſhed by hunger on the ſpot, or become a prey during night to the firſt ferocious animal that might have met her. As the fuſees which I ordered to be diſcharged on her account had not rouſed any game; and as I was beſides convinced, from an exact ſurvey of the foreſt, that I could not hope to find any, we proceeded on our march the next morning.

Scarcely had we advanced four leagues, when, in croſſing a ſmall river which takes its ſource in this foreſt, my two-wheeled waggon was overturned. The remainder of the day was ſcarcely ſufficient for us to recover,

dry, and put in order my kitchen furniture and neceſſaries: a great part of my procelain being broken, was left on the ſpot; but very luckily I had more to replace it. Having proceeded three leagues further, we were ſtopped by the river Duyvenochs, which at that time was not fordable. As this country was covered with wood, I flattered myſelf with the hopes of finding pretty birds and inſects: reſolving, therefore, to wait till the river ſhould decreaſe, I ordered my tents to be erected at the edge of the foreſt, while my Hottentots conſtructed ſome huts.

I was, however, very unlucky; for the inhabitants of the neighbourhood, informed of my arrival, came with great eagerneſs to pay me a viſit, and to diſturb me in my charming retreat. I was teaſed with the long preambles they made to their obliging ſpeeches, in which they reproached me for not ſtopping among them; and harraſſing me with the offers which they repeated, under a thouſand different forms, to prevail upon me, they mentioned, with much emphaſis, ſeveral curious travellers whom they had entertained, and particularly Dr. Sparmann, a member of the Swediſh

Sweediſh Academy: but, however reſpectable this authority appeared, I thought proper not to quit my camp.

I had reſolved never to lodge in any habitation, during the courſe of my travels, that I might be more at freedom, both in the day-time and in the night; and that I might have my people and baggage always at hand, in order to huſband thoſe valuable moments which one muſt always ſacrifice to the idle talk and abſurd relations of theſe planters, who fatigue you with their tales, and exhauſt you with their queſtions; but, above all, that I might ſave my ſpirituous liquors, with which I ſhould have been continually obliged to enliven their tedious converſations. I therefore thanked theſe gentlemen, who were not able to divert me from my purpoſe, ſo firm and irrevocable was my reſolution. The conduct of Dr. Sparmann was no example to me; for our different views muſt have given us different ideas: he had occaſion only for day-light, to enable him to purſue his botanical reſearches; but as I often ſpent a part of the night in hunting, if I found it neceſſary, I ſhould have been obliged to abſtain from this practice, or to derange my hoſts. Another

motive, which is purely perſonal, may, in two words, give an idea of my character, and of the plan of life which it had induced me to embrace: ſhould it appear to be a mark of ſelf-love, my age, the education I have received, my country, and the difficulties I overcame, will, I hope, eaſily plead my excuſe. Though I acknowledge the utility of proper highways among civilized nations, my being accuſtomed to form them myſelf, in my youth, at Surinam, made me always conſider them as a reſtraint which leſſens the value of liberty. Proud of his origin, man thinks it an indignity that people ſhould beforehand dare to number his ſteps. I have always carefully avoided beaten tracks; and never thought myſelf completely free, but when ſurrounded by the rocks, foreſts, and deſarts of Africa, I was certain of meeting with no other traces of human labour than thoſe which I left myſelf. By the freedom of my will, which commanded them with ſovereign ſway, and by my complete independence, I really perceived in man the monarch of all animated beings, the abſolute deſpot of nature. Situations which I thought delightful, might by others be thought very alarming. Theſe whimſical

notions

notions proceed from the impreſſions I received in the early part of my life; they are only the pure and natural ſentiments of liberty, which rejects, without diſtinction, every thing that ſeems deſirous of preſcribing it bounds. I was attached to my principles by too many reaſons not to adhere rigidly to them; and if I except only one inſtance, when through policy it was abſolutely impoſſible for me to refuſe an invitation, I never deviated from my plan during all my travels.

I diſtributed the employment of my time; and the uſual order of my occupations was as follows:—During the night, when we did not travel, I ſlept in my tent, or in my waggon: at the break of day, awakened by my cock, I immediately got ready every thing myſelf for making my coffee, whilſt my people were employed in cleaning and taking care of my animals. On the firſt appearance of the ſun's rays, I took my fuſee, and ſetting out with my ape, we made a diligent ſearch every where around till the hour of ten. When I returned to my tent, I found it always clean and well ſwept: it was under the particular care of an old African, named *Swanepoel*; who, being no longer capable of

THE UNITED PRESBYTERIAN MISSION LIBRARY

following us in our excurſions on foot, remained to guard the camp, in which he preſerved good order. The furniture of my tent was not cumberſome; one or two chairs, a table which I employed only for diſſecting animals, and ſome utenſils neceſſary for preſerving them, formed all its ornaments. I then laboured from ten o'clock till noon; and during that interval I claſſed in my drawers the inſects which I had caught.—The ceremony of my dinner was equally ſimple. I placed upon my knees a piece of board, covered with a cloth, upon which one diſh only of roaſt or broiled meat was ſerved up. After this frugal repaſt, which did not detain me long, I returned to my labour, if I had any work to finiſh; and then I ſet out to hunt till ſunſet. On my return I lighted a candle, and paſſed a few hours in committing to my journal my obſervations, acquiſitions, and in ſhort all the events of the day. During this time my Hottentots collected my oxen around my waggons and tent. The goats, after they were milked, lay down here and there indiſcriminately among my dogs. When buſineſs was finiſhed, and a large fire kindled, as uſual, we placed ourſelves in a circle round it. I drank my tea; and while my people were cordially ſmoking their

pipes,

pipes, they told tales, the natural humour of which often made me ſhake my ſides with laughter. I took great pleaſure in encouraging them; and in proportion as I ſhewed more frankneſs, good-nature, and attention, they were the leſs timid before me. Often indeed, when in better humour, or more favourably diſpoſed by the ſight of a charming evening, after the fatigues of the day, I felt myſelf hurried away by an involuntary charm, and I gently yielded to the illuſion. I then ſaw them contending who ſhould ſhew moſt wit to pleaſe me; and the beſt ſtory-teller could judge favourably of his performance by the profound ſilence which prevailed among us. I know not what powerful attraction continually carries me back to theſe peaceful ſcenes. I ſtill behold myſelf in the middle of my camp, ſurrounded by my people and animals: a plant, a flower, a fragment of rock, ſcattered here and there—nothing eſcapes my memory; and this ſpectacle, always affecting, every where amuſes and follows me.

Our converſations were ſometimes prolonged till very late at night; and I muſt candidly confeſs that lively ſallies which greatly delighted me, often eſcaped from theſe clowniſh people, who had never been poliſhed by edu-

cation. I aſked them many queſtions; above all, reſpecting Kolben, and different authors; and concerning their religion, their laws, and their cuſtoms: but they openly laughed in my face. Sometimes, taking the matter in a ſerious light, I ſaw them fall in a paſſion, ſhrug up their ſhoulders, and give vent to their imprecations. I remember that, endeavouring to vilify their faculties and intelligence, in order to nettle them, I compared them to thoſe people who, in the capital of a great nation like Paris, procure without labour a genteel ſubſiſtence to a prodigious number of vagabonds, honoured with the modeſt appellation of *ſharpers*. I repreſented to them, under a thouſand different forms, the ingenious reſources of theſe cameleons, and greatly extolled their merit: but with what ſatisfaction did I obſerve them unanimouſly prefer the ſimplicity of their rural and peaceful life, and conſider theſe reſources as baſe and ſordid means, for a nation who boaſt of their ſuperiority over the people of nature!--- Worthy mortals, who have been painted to us as devouring your fellow-creatures, and whom a child however might manage! peaceful Hottentots! treat with contempt thoſe people who reduce you to a ſtate of ſlavery, and diſtinguiſh

you

you from brutes only by the cruelties which they withhold from them, in order to beſtow them upon you.

My animals were ſo well accuſtomed to mix among us, that I was often obliged to force many of them to riſe before I could reach my tent. I had a few ſheep, which I ſpared as a reſource, in caſe of ſcarcity; but I always kept ſome old ones to tame the new comers.

The canton in which we reſided abounded with partridges of three different kinds; one of which was as large as our pheaſant. This was our uſual food. We put a ſcore of them into our kettles at once, and they made excellent ſoup and jelly broth. We found alſo a kind of antelope, of the ſize of our European goats; the ſkin of which was of a blackiſh brown colour, with a few white ſpots on the thighs. I never found any thing more excellent eating. I killed ſeveral of them; as well as of another ſpecies, much ſmaller, which I ſhall deſcribe hereafter.

My reſidence in this place had conſiderably augmented my collection of inſects and of curious birds; and as an inhabitant of the neighbourhood, who was going to the Cape, came to offer me his ſervices, I readily accepted them,

them, and begged him to deliver my ſmall treaſure into the hands of Mr. Boers the fiſcal. I had agreed with the latter that I would ſend him all my novelties as often as I could find an opportunity: by this plan, even in the commencement of my journey, I preſerved many valuable objects from the danger of accidents, and reſerved room for others.

My neighbours occaſionally ſent me vegetables and fruit; and Mr. Vanwerck, who reſided nearer my camp, knowing that I was fond of milk, ſent me every evening a pailful, which I ſhared with my people. Kees always perceived the approach of the perſon who brought it, even at a great diſtance, and never failed to run to meet him.

From Swellendam, as far as Duyvenochs, the paſtures are excellent; and the land, ſuperior to that of the Cape, would produce corn in abundance: but the planters cultivate no more than what is neceſſary for their own conſumption; and the only trade they carry on with the Cape conſiſts in cattle and butter. Some vineyards are found here; but, as the wine is of a bad quality, it is converted into vinegar or ſpirits, which are ſold in the neighbourhood.

On

On the 27th of the month, perceiving that the river had ſubſided much, we croſſed it without ſuſtaining any damage. We croſſed alſo the river Falſe; and, after a march of thirteen hours, arrived at the river of Gous or Gourits: at the latter, however, we were ſtopped; for we found it impoſſible to croſs it, as it was larger than the Seine oppoſite the king's garden at Paris. Great ſtorms muſt have inundated the country through which it flows; for at that ſeaſon it is generally, like the reſt, only a rivulet which may be eaſily forded. Its banks abound with large thorny trees*, and with great numbers of partridges; particularly of that large ſpecies which the inhabitants of the Cape call *pheaſants*. After remaining encamped three days, obſerving no decreaſe in the river, and being always impatient to penetrate ſtill farther, I found only one method of extricating myſelf from my embarraſſment. I reſolved to cauſe a large raft to be conſtructed; and, having cut down ſome trees, we employed the bark of them to make ropes. But to what labour did this fatal operation ſubject us! We were ob-

* The *Mimoſa Nilotica.*

liged

liged to unload our carriages, to take off their wheels, and to embark them piece by piece. All my animals croſſed by ſwimming; and in ſeveral paſſages I reached the oppoſite ſhore, with my people and effects, without the ſmalleſt diſorder, or the leaſt accident. This attempt, which was attended with wonderful ſucceſs, gave me great confidence reſpecting the future, and tended greatly to increaſe my courage.—This operation, however, coſt us three days continued labour; during which time I was obliged to ſuſpend my hunting excurſions. I myſelf ſet an example to the reſt, and handled the axe like the meaneſt of my Hottentots. I judged the precaution of removing a little farther very neceſſary to our common ſafety; for the banks of the river which we had quitted were ſo parched and ſo barren, that all my oxen muſt have died of hunger.

Our carriages being remounted, and well loaded, we continued our journey, and travelled fourteen leagues in two days, when we found ourſelves oppoſite *Moſſel-Baie*, or Muſcle Bay, which in charts is called the Bay of Saint Blaiſe. It is very difficult for ſhips here to approach the coaſt, on account of the ſharp rocks that border it, the baſes of which

which extend a good way into the ſea; but on the northern ſide there is a ſmall beach, where boats may land with great eaſe. The environs of this country are interſperſed with excellent plantations, which might be a great reſource for ſhips that come hither to water: a ſalubrious ſpring, diſtant about a thouſand paces from the ſea, would ſupply them with abundance of water. During our abode in this bay, we found no want of oyſters. We often fiſhed with a line, and this method alone procured us a great many excellent fiſh; what we could not conſume, I ordered to be ſalted. Every night we were alarmed with the cries of hyænas, which appeared to be very furious animals: our oxen were much diſturbed by them; but by means of large fires, with which we ſurrounded our camp, they were prevented from attempting to approach us.

At the diſtance of a league, I found a kraal, conſiſting of four huts, in which was a Hottentot family, not exceeding twenty-five or thirty perſons, to whom I gave a ſmall quantity of tobacco in exchange for ſome mats, which I was very glad to procure. This diſcovery gave me great pleaſure, both on account

account of the profit which I derived from it, as well as of the agreeable ſurpriſe it occaſioned. I took great delight in contemplating them, for a long time, in their peaceful occupations. They poſſeſſed five milch cows, and a ſmall flock of ſheep. In the labouring ſeaſon, the men diſperſed themſelves over the neighbouring plantations, where by their induſtry they amaſſed enough to procure themſelves tobacco, and to render their ſituation more comfortable. They aſſured me that, in the large woods with which the ſides of all the mountains in this country are covered, elephants and buffaloes were ſometimes to be met with. Upon this intelligence I immediately began to ſearch the mountains and foreſts; but my labour was in vain, for neither I nor my people could diſcover any of them. I perceived, indeed, the prints of the feet of elephants, but they had been made long before; from which I gueſſed, what was afterwards told me, that if chance at any time brings one of theſe animals into this country, the inhabitants aſſemble, and oblige it to betake itſelf to flight, if they cannot deſtroy it.

On

On the 7th, at five in the morning, I quitted Muſcle Bay, and at two in the afternoon croſſed a river called *Klein-Brak*; it has its ſource in a wood, riſing on a ridge of mountains, which in this place is only a league diſtant from the ſea. Next morning we arrived at a large river of the ſame name, which is no more than three leagues from the former. The flowing of the tide renders the water of this river brackiſh: to croſs it without danger, we were obliged to wait for the ebb-tide; and during that interval I procured ſeveral ſea-fowls, which were extremely abundant in this canton. I found here thouſands of pelicans and flamingoes; the deep roſe-colour of the one, and the dull white of the other, exhibited a contraſt altogether new and curious.

After quitting the river, we had to climb a ſteep and rugged mountain, which at firſt frightened me a good deal; but by the help of patience, care, and time, we left it behind us. When we had entirely reached its ſummit, we were well repaid for all our fatigue, by the noble view which opened on our ſight; we had here an opportunity of admiring the moſt beautiful country in the univerſe. At a

diſtance we diſcovered that chain of mountains, covered with lofty foreſts, which bounded our proſpect towards the weſt; and under us we beheld an immenſe valley, adorned with agreeable hills, variegated in an infinite number of ſhapes, and which extend in an undulating manner as far as the ſea. Enamelled meads, and the moſt beautiful paſtures, ſtill added to this magnificent ſcene, with which I was truly enchanted. This country bears the name of *Auteniqua*; which, in the Hottentot idiom, ſignifies a man loaded with honey. One indeed cannot proceed a ſtep here without ſeeing a thouſand ſwarms of bees: the flowers on which they feed ſpring up in myriads; the mixed odours which exhale from them, and which yield a delightful gratification to the ſmell—their colours, their variety, and the pure and cool air which one breathes—all engage your attention, and ſuſpend your courſe. Nature has made theſe enchanting regions like a fairy land. The calices of all theſe flowers abound with excellent juices, from which the bees compoſe their honey: they depoſit it every where around, in hollow rocks and trees. My people were extremely deſirous of ſtopping ſome time

time in this charming retreat, but I was afraid it would be to them what Capua was to Annibal's ſoldiers. Without loſs of time, therefore, I gave orders for continuing our journey, and haſtened towards the river Wet-Els, which takes its name from the woods that grow on its banks. From the large brackiſh river to this place, we had travelled only ſeven leagues.

On the 9th, we croſſed ſeveral ſmall rivulets, which flowing down from the mountains, run into the ſea through an hundred different channels.

All the ſtreams of theſe rivulets have the amber colour of Madeira wine, and I found that their taſte was ferruginous; but I did not take time to examine whether this taſte and colour proceeded from their flowing through ſome mine in their paſſage, or from the roots and leaves of trees which they water, and carry along with them. From this place the laſt poſt belonging to the Company was not far diſtant, and we arrived at it after a quick march of three hours. I was now about to withdraw myſelf from the dominion of man, and to approach a little towards his original condition.

M. Mulder, the commander, came to receive me, and ſhewed me every mark of friendſhip. He has under him only a ſubaltern officer, and about fifteen men, who have all been either ſoldiers or ſailors on board the Company's ſhips. Theſe people cut down all the timber they have occaſion for, and conſtruct the carriages deſtined to tranſport it: which is a very abſurd plan; for if this timber were depoſited at Muſcle Bay, a paltry bark might in one voyage carry more to the Cape, than would be conveyed on carriages in thirty years: this would aſſuredly be a conſiderable ſaving to the Company, and a general benefit to the colonies. I may add alſo that the inhabitants of the Cape would not find themſelves reduced to the neceſſity of burning ſmall wood, which they collect at a great expence every where around, by ſlaves who have no other employment; a method which coſts at leaſt the double of what is paid for the fineſt wood in the timber-yards at Paris.

Can it be believed that the directors of the Company, for their own uſe, ſhould order ſhips to be ſent every year from Amſterdam, loaded with planks and boards of every kind, whilſt in this country there are immenſe foreſts,

reſts, and the moſt beautiful trees in the world? This abſurdity, however, is not at all aſtoniſhing. The Company gratuitouſly furniſhes the governor and all the officers with whatever wood they have occaſion for, and it is delivered to them at their houſes, without any expence; the governor therefore has no perſonal intereſt to extend his views to this part of the adminiſtration, and to aboliſh an abuſe ſo prejudicial to the colony.

The whole country of Auteniqua, from the chain of mountains to the ſea, is inhabited by ſeveral planters, who rear a quantity of cattle, make butter, cut down timber, and collect honey, all of which they tranſport to the Cape.

I was in ſome meaſure filled with indignation to ſee people, who have wood within their reach, employ it in commerce, and not have the courage to build for themſelves habitable houſes. They live in wretched habitations, conſtructed of wicker-work daubed over with clay: the ſkin of a buffalo, fixed at the four corners to as many ſtakes, ſerves them for a bed; and the door, which is at the ſame time a window, is ſhut by a mat; while two or three mutilated chairs, a

few pieces of plank, a kind of table, and a pitiful box two feet ſquare, form all the furniture of theſe real huts. This is the picture of the moſt profound miſery contraſted with the charms of this terreſtrial paradiſe; for the beauties of theſe regions, which I have already ſketched out, extend even beyond Autenique.

Theſe people however live well; they have game and ſalt-water fiſh in abundance; and enjoy excluſively, over all the other cantons of theſe colonies, the advantage of having the whole year, without interruption, vegetables and plants of every kind in their gardens. For theſe valuable advantages they are indebted to the excellence of the ſoil, and to its being naturally watered by ſmall ſtreams, which croſs each other in a thouſand different directions, and, as one may ſay, lay the four ſeaſons under contribution to fertilize it. This country may juſtly be called the Limagne * of Africa. Theſe ſtreams, which never dry up in this delightful territory, proceed from a cauſe well known. The high mountains

* A territory of France, in Lower Auvergne, lying along the river Allier. It is one of the fineſt and moſt fertile plains in France. T.

towards

towards the eaſt, which are covered with foreſts, ſtop the clouds and the fogs carried by the eaſt wind from the ſea, and this occaſions very abundant rains.

It ſeemed favourable to my views that I ſhould remain ſome days here with the commander; and this is the only inſtance in which I deviated from my plan. Beſides particular motives which induced me to take this ſtep, I was detained by political reaſons, and I could not refuſe his invitation with any kind of decency: an order had been every where ſent to ſuffer me to paſs, to aſſiſt me, and to furniſh me with every thing that I ſhould have occaſion for. As Mr. Mulder occupied the laſt poſt, he had received more poſitive orders than the reſt, and I could not help complying with his wiſhes: the honourable motives of his behaviour were to me a ſufficient invitation; and perhaps he himſelf depended upon the teſtimony which my gratitude would give in his favour, when I returned to the Cape.

As ſoon as I arrived at his habitation, I began, according to cuſtom, to examine the neighbourhood. In traverſing the woods, I found the traces of buffaloes and elephants,

which appeared to be very freſh; I ſaw alſo ſome of their dung: and obſerved a great number of different birds, none of which I had hitherto met with, and among others ſeveral touracos. Leſs than this would have been ſufficient to detain me in this ſpot. At the diſtance of four or five leagues from the place where Mr. Mulder reſided, I found, on the edge of a wood, a very commodious and convenient ſpot for fixing my camp.

As Mr. Mulder was about to depart for the Cape, he ſupplied me with twenty pounds of gunpowder; I embraced this opportunity alſo to write to my friends, and to ſend Mr. Boers about an hundred birds, and a ſmall box of inſects. I increaſed my train with a few oxen, engaged three more Hottentots, purchaſed a young horſe, which I propoſed to breed myſelf to hunting; and on the 9th of February bid adieu to Mr. and Mrs. Mulder, in order to take poſſeſſion of my foreſt, and to eſtabliſh myſelf in the ſpot which I had made choice of.

I had beforehand ſent my people to prepare the place, to cut down ſome trees, and to clear away the buſhes with which the ground was covered, that on my arrival I might be able to

erect

erect my tents, which I accompliſhed in a moment. My kitchen was eſtabliſhed under a large tree, that ſeemed to have grown old there on purpoſe; and my Hottentots, on their part, built and arranged a few huts as well as they could. At the diſtance of ten paces from us we had a ſmall ſtream of water, pure as cryſtal; and oppoſite a little hill, covered with excellent graſs for our horſes and oxen; by theſe means we kept them always near us. So many advantages united, rendered this an agreeable reſting place; but unluckily we were obliged to remove ſeveral times; as the game of all kinds, rendered ſhy by our continual purſuits, began to grow ſcarce, and would have retired from us altogether.

I was ſometimes viſited by the inhabitants of this diſtrict; which enabled me to procure a ſufficiency of fruits, vegetables, milk, and of every thing elſe they could ſupply me with: their viſits indeed coſt me ſome bottles of ſpirits; but as I deteſt theſe noxious liquors, and never drank of them, this attraction retained them a little, and the impreſſion which they made on my caſks was not deadly.

I conjectured that the wood near which I had placed my camp, would furniſh me with

ſome touracos. As I was not acquainted with theſe birds, and had never ſeen one of them, I went in ſearch of them, and was lucky enough to diſcover a few. I ſpent a long time in purſuing them, but without effect; for as theſe birds perch always on the extremities of the higheſt branches, I never found them within the reach of my fuſee. One afternoon however, I followed one, and did more execution. Hopping from ſpray to ſpray, ſtill going only a little way from me, it deceived me for more than an hour, and conducted me to a great diſtance; till being out of patience with its ſport, and finding that I could not approach it, I fired, though I concluded it to be out of my reach, and had the ſatisfaction of ſeeing it drop. My joy on this occaſion was inexpreſſible: but the moſt difficult part was not yet accompliſhed; it was neceſſary for me to ſeize my prey; and, as I had remarked the place where it fell, I ruſhed through the buſhes to take it up, at the expence of having my legs and hands torn, and all covered with blood. When I reached the ſpot, I ſaw nothing; and though I carefully ſearched every where around, going backwards and forwards twenty times over the ſame places, cloſely examining

examining the ſmalleſt holes and crevices, my labour was fruitleſs, for I could not find my touraco. My reſearches and reflections led me to think that I had perhaps broken only one of its wings, which had not prevented it to get away from the ſpot where it had fallen. Full of this idea, I went a little farther, and began again to ſearch all the environs for more than half an hour; but ſtill no touraco. This diſappointment reduced me almoſt to a ſtate of deſpair; and the thick buſhes and prickly ſhrubs, which ſcratched even my face, had really agitated me with tranſports difficult to be deſcribed. To ſatiate my anger, I am ſenſible that nothing leſs would have been ſufficient at that moment than to purſue a lion or a tiger. That a paltry bird, which I had brought down after ſo many difficulties, and ſo much deſire for it, ſhould eſcape and thus vaniſh from my ſight, was truly diſtreſſing. Unable to contain my paſſion, I began to ſtamp, and to beat the ground with my fuſee; but the earth ſinking ſuddenly below me, I diſappeared alſo, and fell with my arms into a pit twelve feet in depth. My aſtoniſhment, and the hurt I received by my fall, ſoon made me forget my anger; and I found myſelf at the bottom

tom of one of thoſe covered ſnares which the Hottentots employ to catch ferocious animals, particularly elephants. When I recovered from my ſurprize, I began to conſider how I ſhould extricate myſelf from this embarraſſment, extremely happy that I had not been impaled on the ſharp-pointed ſtake placed in the bottom of the pit, and ſtill happier that I found in it no company. I was however apprehenſive that ſome might arrive every moment; eſpecially if I ſhould be obliged to remain there during the night. Its approach began to fill me with great terror; as it oppoſed and retarded the only reſource I had deviſed to ſave myſelf from the fatal pit, without the aſſiſtance of others. This reſource was to dig away the earth on one ſide with my ſabre and my hands, in order to form a kind of ſteps; but as ſuch an operation might be very tedious, I formed, though under the moſt diſmal perplexity, the wiſer reſolution of loading my fuſee, and of firing ſhot after ſhot in hopes that I might be heard at my camp. I from time to time liſtened with the utmoſt anxiety, and a palpitating heart; and at length had the ſatisfaction of hearing two reports, which inſpired me with the utmoſt joy. I then continued

tinued to fire by intervals, to direct thoſe who had anſwered me which way to purſue their courſe; and ſoon after I ſaw them arrive, all completely armed, but full of trouble and uneaſineſs. They had imagined that I was purſued by ſome ferocious animal; but they ſaw me on the contrary, in the moſt pitiful ſituation, and caught fooliſhly like a fox. Their alarm, however, was ſoon diſſipated; they immediately cut a long pole, which they let down to me; and by means of this expedient I glided up in the beſt manner I could, and reached the brink of the pit. This trifling accident, from which heaven would not have ſaved me as it ſaved young Daniel, did not make me forget my touraco. With my dogs, which had followed my Hottentots, I truſted I ſhould be able to diſcover it, in whatever place it might be concealed: ſending them out, therefore, on the ſearch, they found it ſquatted down under a tufted buſh. I inſtantly laid my hands upon it; and the pleaſure of at length poſſeſſing this charming animal, ſoon obliterated from my mind the dangers and embarraſſment it had coſt me.

I afterwards procured as many of them as I wiſhed: I even caught them all alive; for having

having remarked, in the ſtomach of this one, the fruits on which they principally feed, I always had recourſe to the trees which produced theſe fruits, whether I wiſhed to fire or to lay ſnares for them.

This bird, as agreeable by its form as by its colour and notes, which are very diſtinct, unites nimbleneſs to elegance; all its motions are laſcivious, and its attitudes full of grace. Its colour is a bright graſs green; a beautiful tuft of the ſame colour, bordered with white, ornaments its head; its eyes, which are of a lively red, are crowned with eyebrows of a dazzling white; and its wings are of the moſt beautiful purple, which changes to a violet, according to the attitudes it aſſumes, or the point of view under which it is ſeen.

Naturaliſts have very improperly claſſed this bird among the cuckows, with which it has no relation whatever. The cuckow, in every country of the world, is a bird that feeds only on caterpillars, inſects, &c. but the touraco feeds on fruits.

The cuckow, in every climate, never lays but in the neſts of other birds: which, by theſe means, ſhe loads with the burden of hatching her young: the touraco, more affectionate

tionate and more careful of its family, conſtructs its own neſt, where it lays eggs and hatches them itſelf.

Theſe two characters are ſufficient to form a ſpecies entirely diſtinct from the cuckow; but I ſhall reſume this ſubject, and enlarge upon it, in my ornithology.

In thoſe intervals when the heavy rains or exceſſive heats ſeemed to compel me not to go abroad, which was however very rare, I did not, on that account, ſpend my time in indolence. I employed myſelf, in my tent, in making ſnares to catch animals alive, of every ſpecies. It will hardly be believed that I invented a method of procuring them with my fuſee, more entire and in much better condition than thoſe which I caught in my ſnares: it was in this manner, however, that I procured the ſmalleſt and moſt delicate birds.

It is highly neceſſary that every naturaliſt who labours himſelf in forming a collection, ſhould be acquainted with the method which I *invented*. This expreſſion is not too bold; my idea is abſolutely new, for I never heard that any perſon ever thought of it before me.

The manner in which I proceeded was as follows: I put a ſmaller or larger quantity of powder

der into my fuſee, according as circumſtances might require. Immediately above the powder I placed the end of a candle about an inch in thickneſs, ramming it well down; after which I filled the barrel with water up to the mouth. By theſe means, at the proper diſtance, when I fired at a bird, I only ſtunned it, by watering and moiſtening its feathers; and, as I inſtantly laid hold of it, no time was left for it to ſpoil its plumage by fluttering. The water, impelled by the powder, went directly to the mark; but the piece of tallow, being lighter than the water, did not reach ſo far. In my firſt attempts it often happened, that having ſometimes fired too near, or put too much powder, or too thick a piece of candle, I found the latter entire in the animal's belly; but after a ſhort apprenticeſhip I made no more miſtakes, and never miſſed my aim. I have often let my fuſee remain charged in this manner from morning till night; yet the powder was never damaged, nor did the piece go off leſs readily. It may be eaſily gueſſed that I never fired horizontally in this manner.

One day, after my return to Europe, being at the houſe of a friend, I happened to mention before ſome ſtrangers this method

which I have deſcribed. One of them, who durſt not flatly contradict me, or openly avow his incredulity, endeavoured to prove to the reſt, by very clear arguments, that my aſſertion was at leaſt exaggerated. Whilſt they were diſputing, I retired without being perceived by the company; and having prepared a fuſee according to my own manner, I returned through the garden to the window, where theſe gentlemen were continuing their diſpute. Pointing with my finger to a little bird perched near them, I took aim and fired at it, upon which it fell. I immediately ſeized it; and, delivering it alive into the hands of my antagoniſt, put an end to all his fine reaſoning.

Towards the end of the month we were much impeded by new rains, which continued a long time, and almoſt without intermiſſion. Theſe ſtorms ſucceeded each other with great rapidity; the lightning fell ſeveral times in the foreſt near us; the water gained upon us on all ſides; and, to add to the diſagreeableneſs of our ſituation, our camp was in one night entirely overflown: we therefore quitted the wood, and went to eſtabliſh ourſelves on ſome higher ſpot in the open country. I now ſaw, with the utmoſt uneaſineſs, that it would be impoſſible

impoſſible for us to get out of this place in which we were ſurrounded: thoſe ſmall rivulets, which had before appeared to us ſo pleaſant and agreeable, were changed into furious torrents, which carried ſand, trees, and fragments of rock along with them. I was ſenſible that unleſs I expoſed myſelf to the greateſt dangers, it would be impracticable to croſs them. On the other hand my oxen, haraſſed and chilled with cold, had deſerted my camp; nor did I know how or which way to ſend after them to catch them. My ſituation was far from being comfortable; and I paſſed many moments in great dejection. My poor Hottentots, fatigued and ſick, began already to murmur. We had no more proviſions, and no more game: what we killed was ſcarcely ſufficient for our ſubſiſtence; becauſe, confined by the torrent, which increaſed more and more every day, we had not even the reſource of our neighbours to obtain aſſiſtance. How afflicting our condition with ſuch preparation! One might have ſaid that an univerſal deluge was about to inundate Africa. I however kept part of my apprehenſions to myſelf; whilſt I beheld my ſad companions caſt their reſtleſs looks towards me, and atteſt by their ſilence what fears they entertained

tained for themſelves. Never did a proſpect appear under more gloomy colours: our charming walks, laid waſte by the waters, were in an inſtant ravaged; and thoſe delightful gardens were changed into a diſmal and inhoſpitable deſart. In this diſtreſs, collecting all my forces, I entreated my friends to ſearch, at leaſt, for our loſt and diſperſed oxen; and to reſolve to croſs one of the torrents, whatever might be the conſequence. By the ſtrangeſt caprice of fortune, the fatal event which threatened us with ſudden deſtruction, was in part the occaſion of our ſafety. One of my Hottentots, in ſearching for a paſſage, perceived in the middle of the water a buffalo, which had probably been drowned the evening before, for it was ſtill very freſh: on this diſcovery he came, with ſhouts of joy, to convey us the agreeable intelligence; and nothing indeed could have arrived more ſeaſonably. We drew the animal to the ſhore, not without conſiderable danger; cut it to pieces on the ſpot; and, having carried away the ſoundeſt parts, left the reſt to my dogs, which, having faſted a long time, found great relief in this refreſhment. We ſaw them return from their repaſt with their bellies ſo full that they could

ſcarcely walk. I cannot help mentioning another circumſtance, as it will tend to convey a ſtill better idea of the dreadful ſituation to which we were reduced. Theſe dogs, which were now like walking ſkeletons, watching our motions, followed cloſely at our heels whenever any of us retired to eaſe the wants of nature; and I have ſeen them fight deſperately with one another for this diſguſting nouriſhment.

Nothing in this life is durable; and a period is alloted to misfortunes as well as to felicity. The end of March brought a change in the weather; the rains became leſs frequent, the torrents decreaſed; and I diſpatched four Hottentots in queſt of my oxen, which they brought almoſt all back, after an abſence of four days. Some of them had returned the way we came, and had even repaſſed the large brackiſh river; others had taken ſhelter in different plantations, and ſome had ſhifted for themſelves in the beſt manner they could.—Four of them, however, were miſſing, which my people could not find, nor did I ever afterwards hear any accounts of them, Without delay I prepared to quit this inhoſpitable country, and to tranſport my camp three leagues farther,

farther, to a hill named *Pampoen-Kraal.* I took advantage of two days of fine weather to dry my effects, great part of which were moiſt and half rotten; and the ſkin of the buffalo which we had flayed, ſerved to renew the traces of my waggons and carriages, which the moiſture had rendered unfit for ſervice. Notwithſtanding theſe continual rains, and my cruel diſappointments, I was ſtill capable of making ſome efforts. I had found in the woods an old tree, the trunk of which was hollow; and I went thither with my fuſee almoſt every day, to watch for ſuch ſmall birds or game as might appear. I was there ſheltered at leaſt from the rain, and I ſupported my courage with hope. From this ſacred niche I brought down, without mercy, every thing that preſented itſelf before me. Thus the ſtudy of Nature engaged my attention, in preference to more preſſing wants. Continually inflamed with the powerful deſire of robbing her of her treaſures, I was dying with hunger, and yet thought of my collections. In ſpite of all obſtacles I ſaw my riches gradually increaſe: I had acquired a ſmall collection of rare objects entirely unknown in Europe, which I expoſed to the air; and I found that they

were not ſo much damaged by the moiſture as the reſt of my effects. In this wood we found no game but the boſbock antelope, and a ſmaller ſpecies, of which I have already ſpoken. On the plain, beſides the three ſpecies of partridges above-mentioned, we obſerved another called the *red pheaſant*, becauſe its feet and the naked ſkin of its throat are of that colour. Of carnivorous animals we ſaw tigers and hyænas, but not a ſingle lion.

The heavens became every day more and more ſerene, and ſeemed to preſage that our ſituation would ſoon be as happy as it had been miſerable and gloomy. The hill of Pampoen-Kraal, on which I had placed my camp, pleaſed me much. Not far from my tent ſtood a ſmall eminence, crowned by a thicket of thirty or thirty-five feet in diameter. The trees and ſhrubs of which it was compoſed, in growing had ſo interwoven their branches, that the whole appeared as one very thick and buſhy body. Having imagined that I might convert it into a little palace, I ordered a path to be traced out to its centre, and the branches to be lopped off on each ſide to the height of a man, ſo as to afford an eaſy paſſage. In the middle

middle of the thicket, by the force of labour and employing the hatchet, we were able to cut out two chambers perfectly ſquare; in one of which I placed my table and my chair: this was my ſtudy. The ſecond I ornamented with my kitchen utenſils: but this did not prevent me from uſing it at the ſame time as a dining room. Theſe two apartments, naturally covered with branches and leaves impenetrably thick, afforded me a delightful and cool retreat, when haraſſed and covered with ſweat and duſt, after my hunting excurſion in the morning, I retired from the heat of the day, and the ſcorching rays of the ſun. When fatigue had ſharpened my appetite, what delightful repaſts! when ſleep ſtole upon me, what voluptuous and gentle repoſe!—Ye ſumptuous grottoes of our financiers! ye Engliſh gardens twenty times changed with the wealth of the citizen! why do your ſtreams, your caſcades, your pretty ſerpentine walks, your broken bridges, your ruins, your marbles, and all your fine inventions, diſguſt the taſte and fatigue the eye, when we know the verdant and natural bower of the Pampoen-Kraal?

Whatever it coſt me to abandon this amiable ſolitude, I was however obliged to think

of departing. One day having traverſed the whole neighbourhood, to diſcover what route I ought to purſue, in order to travel with the greateſt eaſe and ſafety, I found, at the diſtance of a league from my camp, a very rapid torrent, named *Kayman's Hole*; but I know not for what reaſon, as in all this country I never obſerved either a kayman or a crocodile. This torrent flowed from two mountains not very high, but exceſſively ſteep: on my right I had the ſea, at the diſtance of about a thouſand paces; and on my left mountains and woods, which it was impoſſible for me to paſs with my cattle and carriages: no other reſource therefore remained for me, but to croſs the dangerous Kayman's Hole. On this account I was very uneaſy, and even vexed. Let the reader imagine to himſelf my ſituation—ſtopped thus at every ſtep; and, when one obſtacle was overcome, ſeeing new ones ſtill riſe before me, while I was fully ſenſible of the neceſſity of penetrating farther. The torrent appeared to me too much ſwelled, and too rapid, to attempt to croſs it. I was, above all, afraid for my oxen; and rafts could only have been employed in tranſporting my effects. I was therefore obliged to arm myſelf

ſelf with patience and to wait a more favourable opportunity.

On the 18th of April I received an expreſs from Mr. Mulder, who, having returned from the Cape, conveyed to me ſome letters which he had brought along with him, and which were in anſwer to thoſe I had entruſted to his care in the beginning of February. I found that my friends were very uneaſy for my fate, and wiſhed me to return. Others exhorted me to perſevere; and, ſitting at eaſe by their fire ſides, gave themſelves little trouble concerning obſtacles, provided my journey could prove of utility to ſcience; or, without going ſo far, ſupply food for their curioſity, in fables related after their manner. I found each of them intereſted according to his particular views: but I reſolved to follow my original plan. It may be eaſily imagined how much the bad ſeaſon had retarded my progreſs, ſince I had ſcarcely travelled eight leagues during the time which Mr. Mulder employed in his journey to the Cape. In a letter which this gentleman wrote to me, he appointed a place of meeting, and propoſed that we ſhould amuſe ourſelves a few days with fiſhing on the ſea ſhore, if ſuch an excurſion would not derange me: he pro-

miſed to bring with him nets, and every thing neceſſary for our ſpending a week together on the coaſt; and he likewiſe informed me that his wife would be one of the party. This propoſal gave me great pleaſure; and, ſoon after the arrival of the meſſenger, Mr. and Mrs. Mulder made their appearance, accompanied by an officer next under Mr. Mulder in command. One might have compared them to ſo many patriarchs on a journey. The latter on the bow of his ſaddle, over his piſtols, carried a young child four months old, which was ſuckled by his wife. They were all four on horſeback. His carriage, with his nets and baggage, had gone to wait for us on the ſea ſhore. Having ordered one of mine to be got ready alſo, I loaded it with my tent, one or two empty caſks, and every thing that I conceived would be uſeful to us for our miraculous fiſhing. When we reached the ſhore, after a few compliments and the uſual ceremonies, we caſt our nets ſeveral times into the water, but always in vain; we ſcarcely caught any thing: and this exerciſe afforded amuſement to nobody. Reſolving, therefore, to proceed a little further, to a ſmall lake formed by the tide, where we hoped to be more

more ſucceſsful, we began to march forwards; but as I was much leſs curious in fiſhes than in birds, I ſhould have been ſoon tired of our ſport, had not the politeneſs of my friends, and the open and eaſy gaiety of the ladies, engaged a little of my attention. I however rambled a good deal about on foot, from one ſide to another, exploring every part around with eager eyes, and not ſuffering either the air, the roads, or the trees to eſcape me. Having arrived at the borders of the lake, I ſought for a commodious ſpot where I might erect my tents: but an alarm, which we little thought of, had nearly deranged all our groteſque cavalcade. In croſſing a ſpot covered with very high and thick reeds, the workmen all of a ſudden came upon a buffalo, which had lain down there to reſt. They were ſo near, that the animal, as much frightened as they by this unexpected apparition, in retiring threw down the horſe of the under commander, and that of his wife. The conſternation now became general; every one endeavoured to fly, and to make off as faſt as poſſible. Mr. Mulder's people, who were not much accuſtomed to buffaloes, being nearer the water, plunged into it up to the neck. Mine, better trained to

hunting,

hunting, aſſumed a bold look; but the animal, ſcared by the ſight of ſo many people on all ſides, and not knowing where to fly, remained motionleſs, poſted againſt an enormous rock. On hearing the noiſe, I immediately ran up; but unluckily I had no other arms except my double-barrelled fuſee. It was not to be ſuppoſed that an ordinary ball would kill a buffalo. I however ventured to approach him, and to fire. As ſoon as I had diſcharged my piece he quitted his poſition, and in a furious manner came ſtraight towards me; but a ſecond ball, which hit him, inſtantly damped his courage: he turned round, and paſſing near one of my oxen, which carried our kitchen apparatus, diſcharged all his fury on this peaceful animal, gave it two blows in the belly with his horns, and ſoon diſappeared. I could not prevail upon the company to remain longer in this place. The huſbands feared much for their wives; and as I judged by their diſordered looks that they were really affected by their tender alarms, I adviſed them to return to our firſt fiſhing place on the ſea ſhore. In our ſecond attempt fortune became more favourable; and we had the ſatisfaction of catching ſo great a quantity

of fiſh, that I ordered ſome of them to be ſalted, and to be packed into my caſks, whilſt Mr. Mulder imitated my example. This ſport, which continued eight whole days, and the occupations which it gave us, amuſed us indeed much more than I had expected. From time to time I abſented myſelf for a little, and I killed ſeveral rare birds; but I was not under the neceſſity of contending with a ſecond buffalo. When we ſalted all our fiſh, we divided our proviſion, and took leave of one another: but I confeſs that I could not leave theſe worthy people without regret; for they had enlivened our little excurſion with a good humour ſo natural, ſo ſimple, and ſo mild. With my eyes I followed their little caravan; and I did not depart until I had entirely loſt ſight of them.

When I returned to my camp, I found every thing in order; my cattle properly taken care of, and my people employed on their duty, for which I teſtified to them my ſatiſfaction.

I committed to the care of Mr. Mulder all the animals I had preſerved ſince I diſpatched my laſt cargo, as well as the living touracos I had caught in ſnares; which he promiſed

to

to tranſmit to Mr. Boers at the Cape. He had alſo the complaiſance to give me one of his nets, and to ſend me a pair of wheels which I aſked from him. As my cart was very inconvenient, and always in danger of being overturned, I reſolved to mount it in the ſame manner as the reſt of my carriages.—This being a work of great neceſſity, we ſet about it immediately; and every one took a ſhare in the labour. The timber requiſite for this operation was ſoon cut out; and in leſs than a fortnight our cart, transformed into a waggon, rolled upon four wheels. It did not indeed in its conſtruction diſplay the hand of a maſter; but it anſwered my purpoſe as well; and I muſt obſerve that the whole fortnight was not employed in altering it. When I perceived that it went well, and that my cartwrights would acquire honour by it, I ſent a detachment of my people to the neighbourhood of the torrent, which we were about to paſs, with orders to fill up the fiſſures, and repair the highways which the waters had ſpoilt. I made them carry ſtones and large branches of trees with them, to render the quagmires paſſable; which, without this precaution, might have diſjointed, and even broken, my carriages.

When

When by the force of exceſſive labour we had ſmoothed every paſs, on the 30th of April I cauſed my caravan to file off before me; and caſting my eye, for the laſt time, on the delightful hermitage of Pampoen-Kraal, quitted it with the ſame regret as that with which a lover ſeparates from his miſtreſs. I often afterwards enquired reſpecting this happy aſylum; and I had the ſatisfaction of learning that it had not only been reſpected, but that the Hottentots had named it after me.

Notwithſtanding all my precaution, we found great difficulty at *Kayman's Hole*, as well as at a river called by the Hottentots in their language *Krakede-Kau*, which ſignifies the *girls ford.* This country was formerly inhabited by Hottentots, who are all now extinct or diſperſed: the deep pits which are to be ſeen at certain diſtances, indicate that they were hunters; and that they caught in their ſnares buffaloes and elephants: but theſe animals are never or rarely now ſeen in this canton.

After a journey of eight hours, we arrived near the *Swarte Rivier*, or Black River: as it was ſtill ſwelled by the rains, we were obliged to paſs it on rafts, which we conſtructed in

the

the ſame manner as before. The freſh traces of buffaloes which we obſerved on the other ſide made us remain here ſome time: and I at length had the pleaſure of killing one; a Hottentot I carried along with me, killed alſo another. I was ſo pleaſed with my ſucceſs, that I inſtantly returned to my camp, to announce this agreeable intelligence, which promiſed a ſupply of proviſion to my people for a long time, in caſe we ſhould be reduced to diſtreſs. As we had killed theſe two animals on the banks of the river, above the place where I had ſettled, I ordered them to be puſhed into the ſtream, which conveyed them oppoſite to my tent, where they were cut up: and I deſired them to be cut into very ſmall pieces, that they might be more eaſily ſalted, and expoſed afterwards to the air and the ſun. Our waggons, as well as the buſhes and trees that ſurrounded us, were all loaded with bloody fragments of our buffaloes; but on a ſudden, in the midſt of our operation, and while we were not expecting it, we found ourſelves attacked by flights of kites and vultures; which, without any fear, perched among us. The kites, above all, were the moſt impudent. They rapaciouſly ſeized upon the morſels of

fleſh,

fleſh, and even contended furiouſly with my people. When they had each carried away a pretty large piece, they retired to ſome branch, at the diſtance of ten paces from us, and devoured it before our eyes. Though we fired our fuſees, they were not frightened, but returned inceſſantly to the charge; ſo that, finding that I waſted my powder in vain, we reſolved to diſperſe them, and drive them away with large poles, until our proviſions ſhould be quite dry. This manœuvre, which for a long time haraſſed my people, did not prevent us from being plundered without mercy; but, had we not employed it, nothing abſolutely would have remained of our two buffaloes.

The tongues I ordered to be ſmoked; and I never omitted to purſue the ſame method with thoſe of all the animals I afterwards killed.

This was a great delicacy; and a reſource for me when our proviſions fell ſhort. When I wiſhed to indulge in ſenſuality, or to awaken my appetite, I added a ſmall plateful of it to my uſual allowance. There were none but the tongues of elephants which I did not wiſh to preſerve in this manner: their taſte, and even their figure, always occaſioned a diſguſt which

which I could never overcome, and which it would be very difficult to account for.

When our provisions were prepared and packed up, we quitted the Black River; and having crossed the *Goucom*, two leagues thence, we reached the *Nyssena*, after travelling two leagues more. The latter is a considerable stream, and was still swelled by the tide.—Hitherto I had found no spot more agreeable for fixing my camp. Here I had a most delightful meadow of about a thousand feet square; a forest of tall trees formed a magnificent shelter on the south, extending circularly towards the east; on the north I had before me the river, which appeared to be very abundant in fish; and a variety of small game swarmed on its banks. So many advantages might have almost made me forget Pampoen-Kraal; but all its attractions could not tempt me to stop. Agitated by a secret uneasiness, I saw on the other side of the river a difficult mountain, which it was necessary for us to pass. It was so prodigiously steep, that I apprehended some accident would befal me; for an internal foreboding seemed strongly to announce it. I had indeed almost lost, in one moment, whe whole fruits of my labours, and of my incredible fatigues. I had

had taken the prudent precaution to conduct my waggons one after the other; for, had I attempted to make them mount altogether, I ſhould not have had oxen enough to draw them. I ordered twenty to be yoked to my *maſter waggon*; which, as I have already ſaid, carried all my artillery and my principal riches. My oxen ſet out; and, by climbing with great exertion, had almoſt reached the ſummit; but the chain which kept the firſt eighteen together breaking all of a ſudden, the waggon rolled down with great precipitation to the bottom of the mountain, carrying with it the two oxen yoked to the pole. From the eminence on which we ſtood, my conductors and I followed it with our eyes, almoſt petrified with fear, and in the moſt dreadful agitation.—Twenty times did we ſee it ready to fall over the precipice that bordered the way: and this misfortune would have infallibly taken place, had it not been for the ſuperior ſtrength of the two oxen attached to the pole, which nothing could overcome. This accident, had it happened, muſt have entirely ſuſpended my journey. My carriage, and my moſt valuable effects, would have been daſhed to pieces; my powder, my ſhot, and my arms would

have been ſcattered: and I ſhould have been entirely ruined without the leaſt reſource. The waggon was, however, ſtopped by a rock on the banks of the torrent. We deſcended with ſhouts of joy; and having collected my effects, and put every thing in its proper place, we again yoked the oxen to this fatal carriage; which, without danger, regained in an hour what it had loſt in ten minutes. The reſt, being not quite ſo heavy, arrived in perfect ſafety. I had ordered the traces to be doubled, and four men to eſcort the wheels, all ready to put their hands to the ſpokes on the leaſt jolt. The road however was ſo ſteep, that this would not have prevented a fall; but it would have diminiſhed the rapidity of it, and given us time to direct the carriage in ſuch a manner, as beſt to avoid the dreadful precipice.

Fear is a magnifying glaſs which always enlarges objects. Mine had announced ſome thing very unlucky. In vain ſhould I attempt to paint my looks, and the agitation of my mind, in this diſtreſſing moment. I involuntarily followed all the motions of the waggon, and ſeemed to ſet it right by thoſe of my body, and by the geſtures of my arms. Each jolt penetrated to the bottom of my heart.

I however

I however found that our loſs was not ſo great as I expected. I might almoſt ſay indeed that a miracle was operated in my favour; and I perceived that the god of the fatal trident did not always purſue me. I not only found that my carriage had eſcaped without much damage, but the ſhocks it ſuſtained had not materially deranged what it contained. My oxen, which were dragged backwards by a waggon that weighed nearly two tons, and which might have been daſhed to pieces before they arrived at the bottom of the mountain, eſcaped with only a few dangerous wounds, which did not prevent them from continuing their labour. It muſt be confeſſed that our misfortune, allowing for time loſt, was not very great; though we had every reaſon to fear for the future.

In proportion as I got at a diſtance from the plantations, and advanced into the country, every thing in my eyes aſſumed a new appearance. The proſpects became more magnificent; the ſoil ſeemed to be more fruitful and rich; nature appeared to be more majeſtic and grand; and the lofty mountains preſented, on all ſides, more charming and delightful points of view, than I had ever met with. Theſe

ſcenes, contraſted with the dry and parched fields of the Cape, made me believe that I was more than a thouſand leagues from it. "What!" ſaid I, in my extacy, "ſhall theſe "ſuperb regions be eternally inhabited by "tigers and lions? What ſpeculator, with "the ſordid view only of eſtabliſhing a kind "of centre for commerce, could have preferred "the ſtormy Table Bay to the numberleſs "roads, and natural and commodious harbours, "which are to be found on the eaſtern coaſts "of Africa?"

Thus was I reflecting within myſelf, whilſt I was climbing the mountain on foot, and forming vain wiſhes for the conqueſt of this beautiful country, which the indolent policy of the European nations will perhaps never gratify.

We ſtill continued to advance, having always to the weſt that great chain of mountains, covered with wood, which we had before perceived at a great diſtance. After travelling four hours and a half, I halted at a ſmall rivulet about three leagues diſtant from the ſea. Here we obſerved a prodigious quantity of fiſh floating up with the tide; and as ſoon as I ſaw them in a ſtate of ſtagnation,

I ordered

I ordered the net which I had received from Mr. Mulder to be extended acroſs the ſtream. This was the firſt time I employed it; and, as it was too long, I found it neceſſary to have it doubled. Were I to mention the number of fiſh which remained when the tide ebbed, I ſhould be conſidered as an extravagant exaggerator: I ſhall only ſay that the net ſuffered conſiderably. My people cooked theſe fiſh with a variety of ſauces: as for me, I reſerved about an hundred for myſelf, which, with different ſpices, I put into a kettle without any water; and having hermetically ſealed the coverlid with a kind of viſcous earth, I buried the whole under hot aſhes. By this arrangement I procured an excellent diſh of fiſh, with which I could ſcarcely be ſatiated; and which laſted me for ſeveral days.

One could not chooſe a more agreeable and advantageous ſpot, than that upon which I then was, for eſtabliſhing a thriving colony. The ſea advances through an opening of about a thouſand paces in breadth, and penetrates into the country to the diſtance of more than two leagues and a half. The baſon which it forms is more than

a league in extent; and the whole coaſt, both on the right and the left, is bordered with rocks, which intercept all communication with it. The land, which is rich and fertile, is watered by limpid and refreſhing ſtreams, that flow down on all ſides from the eaſtern mountains. Theſe mountains, crowned with majeſtic woods, extend as far as the baſon, winding round with a number of ſinuoſities; which exhibit an hundred groves, naturally variegated, and each more agreeable than the other. In this ſpot I found a great many ſmall white herons, of the ſame ſpecies as thoſe ſent from Cayenne, and which I had often ſeen, when young, in Surinam. I diſcovered alſo the large egret *, but it was here more rare.

The woods furniſh ſmall game in abundance: buffaloes, and ſometimes elephants, are alſo found in them. Two or three houſes, the inhabitants of which have no other employment but to carry on a dull and laborious trade in wood and butter with the Cape, are ſeen here; but ſcattered at a very great diſtance from each other.

* A ſpecies of the heron.

In this beautiful country I remained till the 13th. We then croſſed, by very diſagreeable roads, a foreſt named *Le Poort*; and, after travelling ſeven hours more, reached the river *Witte Dreft*. In ſeveral places I obſerved a few more habitations, no leſs miſerable and wretched than the former; for the diſtance, the dangers of the journey, and other obſtacles invincible to theſe poor people, do not permit them, except very rarely, to drive a few oxen to the Cape; and, even when they arrive there, they are in a bad condition; and on that account the owners of them make a bad market, and are as badly paid. At the time I paſſed here, many of theſe people had not been at the Cape for a number of years.

I ſtill continued to advance, but whether it was that fatigue, and the repeated misfortunes I ſucceſſively experienced, had deranged my health; or that I was obliged to pay tribute to theſe new climates, and that the temperature of them made a powerful impreſſion on my conſtitution—I was often attacked by ſudden ſickneſs, and haunted with the gloomy idea that I ſhould leave my aſhes at the diſtance of two thouſand leagues from my family. My imagination, too lively, ſtill exaggerated this

misfortune; and I gave way to dejection and deſpair. The moſt diſmal melancholy took poſſeſſion of my mind; for I now ſaw myſelf in reality ſtopped in my progreſs. I was afflicted with violent head-aches, an extraordinary heavineſs, and a general uneaſineſs, that ſeemed to announce very ſerious danger. This was the only event I dreaded when I ſet out. I found it would be neceſſary for me to ſtop, that I might recruit my ſtrength: and I at laſt formed my reſolution; convinced that the moſt acute diſorder muſt here, as well as amidſt the phyſicians noſtrums, take a favourable turn, or relieve the patient by death.

I dragged myſelf along, therefore, as well as I could, and took a curſory view of the environs. Having obſerved an agreeable ſituation for my camp, in the neighbourhood of a ſmall rivulet, I ordered my tents to be erected at the edge of a wood. I knew nothing of the practice of phyſic, but regimen and repoſe; my people knew ſtill leſs; and, if my malady increaſed, I was likely in their hands to run very great riſques. I became ſo weak, that I was obliged to remain abed in my waggon, which the heat of the ſun rendered like a burning furnace. I was tormented with ex-

crutiating pains in my bowels; a violent dyſentery followed; and I heard my people, in their turn, complain one after the other of the ſame diſtemper. Imagining then that this kind of epidemia was occaſioned by the great quantity of ſalt fiſh which we had eaten, I ordered all that remained of it to be burnt. In the mean time I was waſted by a continual fever; but I did not entirely loſe my ſtrength: and, after a copious perſpiration for twelve days, reſt, and a proper regimen, re-eſtabliſhed me. I took moderate exerciſe, calmed my ſpirits, and I ſoon found myſelf every day get better. The ſame regimen reſtored all my people. I did not fail to add to the liſt of the grand and ſublime diſcoveries in medicine, the warm bath; and I am firmly perſuaded that this bath, or chance, ſaved my life.

When I was perfectly recovered, I reſumed my uſual occupations, exerciſe and hunting. In my firſt excurſion I found that we were flanked by a ſecond river, called *Queur-Boom*, which falls from the weſtern mountains, and is joined by the Witte-Dreft at the diſtance of a league from the ſea. Its mouth is near a bay, called by navigators the Bay of Agoa. In a journey which governor Blettenberg of the Cape

Cape made towards this place, he ordered his name, the year and the day of his arrival, to be engraven on a ſtone column. I examined this wretched monument, which wanted nothing but an inſcription in verſe to render it ſtill more contemptible. This name now prevails in all the colonies; and the Bay of Agoa is known under that of *Blettenberg's Bay.* Thus a paltry poſt, erected by the vanity of an individual, in a moment gives birth to errors which diſconcert conventions before received; and at the ſame time overturn opinions generally adopted by the people. In our neighbourhood there happened to be a flock of from twenty-five to thirty bubales in a place incloſed by the ſea and our two rivers; and as our camp was ſo ſituated, that it filled the whole ſpace which remained for them to eſcape by, theſe animals were entirely at our mercy. Conſidering them as part of our live ſtock, we did not ſpare them; for whenever our proviſions began to fall low, I brought down a couple of them. Not one of them eſcaped us; and their ſkins, when joined together, made a pretty covering for the waggon I had repaired at Pampoen-Kraal.

As

As large troops of buffaloes came to browſe in our ſight, on the other ſide of the Queur-Boom, we gave chaſe to them, and caught ſeveral of them.

This animal is remarkably wild, and one muſt attack it with great precaution in the woods; but in the open fields it is not formidable. It fears, and flies from the preſence of a man. The ſureſt way of catching it, is to haraſs it with dogs. Whilſt it is engaged in defending itſelf, a bullet in the head, or the omoplate, will inſtantly diſpatch it. The bullets to be uſed muſt be of a large ſize, and made either of tin or lead. If the animal is not wounded in the two places above mentioned, it will eſcape.

Its horns are very large and divergent. By the cloſeneſs of their roots to each other, on the forehead, one would almoſt imagine that they proceed from the ſame baſe. The buffaloe is much ſtronger and larger than the moſt beautiful oxen in Europe; and I am of the ſame opinion as many travellers, that it would not be impoſſible to render it tractable and ſubmiſſive to the yoke. That this attempt hath never yet ſucceeded, is but a weak

objection; for falſe experiments are no proof. Such an enterprize, indeed, would require time, knowledge, and art; and ought not to be entruſted to the indolence of an ignorant planter, accuſtomed often to ſee inſurmountable obſtacles in a ſlight difficulty. This ſpeculation is worthy of the grand views of a Company who are continually endeavouring to extend every branch of induſtry and commerce. Were ſome of theſe animals caught when very young, and put into proper incloſures, and were they gradually accuſtomed to come and receive ſome favourite food from their keeper, they would ſoon careſs the hand that feeds them. When they grew up, they would produce young; which, inſtructed by their mothers, would follow their example, and become ſtill more familiar. Why ſhould we not believe that, at the third generation, the manners of the buffaloe would be ſoftened, when we every day ſee ferocious bears, taken from the mountains of Savoy, traverſe our ſtreets, dance, leap, ſalute people, and in a word obey the orders of their conductor with the moſt timid ſubmiſſion to his avaricious caprice.

In general, all animals with horns and cloven feet have a haggard eye, which gives them

them a terrible appearance: but, as in carnivorous and ſanguinary animals, this is not a ſign of fury, on the contrary it indicates terror and fear. They have neither the deep cunning, nor the miſchievous diſpoſition, of the lion, the tiger, or even the elephant. Indeed they have no occaſion for them; the vegetables upon which they feed do not cauſe ſo much heat in their bowels: they are exceedingly wild, but they are timid. In this apparent contraſt I ſee nothing contrary to nature, and I diſcover one of the moſt ſtriking features of man.

I ſhall not here enter into an examination of thoſe complicated ſhades, hitherto ſo little known, which diſtinguiſh ſavage animals from each other. It is always either a regard to their own ſafety, or a deſire of providing for their own ſubſiſtence, that leads them to ferocity; but being, like us, ſubject to paſſions variouſly combined, they proceed to it by different routes. This examination, which is foreign to a work merely hiſtorical, I ſhall reſerve for my deſcription of animals.

I had never yet taken a cloſe ſurvey of the bay, very improperly called Blettemberg. The attention I paid to my health, at the cloſe of

my

my diſorder, had hitherto prevented me from examining it; and, when I went thither for the firſt time, I was much ſurpriſed to find that it was only a very open road, ſcarcely extending into the country at all. It is very ſpacious, and has a ſufficient depth of water for the largeſt veſſels; the anchoring ground is ſure; and, by means of boats, they may be eaſily carried to a beautiful part of the ſhore, which is not confined by the rocks that abound there, as they are all detached from one another. By advancing a league from the coaſt, the crews would arrive at the mouth of the Queur-Boom, where they would find water. Refreſhments might be procured from the inhabitants of the environs; and the bay would ſupply fiſh, with which it abounds; and excellent oyſters, with which all the rocks are covered. This bay is one of thoſe places where government ought to eſtabliſh warehouſes and repoſitories for timber: the foreſts every where around are magnificent; and they could be more eaſily cut down than any where elſe: for it is not to ſteep mountains that one muſt go in ſearch of wood, as in the country of Auteniqua; it is here ready at hand. Warehouſes, as I have ſaid, ought

to

to be erected close to the bay; and, during the fine monsoon, it might be transported to the Cape in a short time, and without any risque. This easy expedient would open the eyes of the inhabitants to their own interest: the exportation would be renewed, and would soon increase. These inexhaustible lands once cultivated, besides affording hopes of abundant crops, would draw thither a great number of intelligent planters, on account of the ready communication which they could have with the Cape: and these people would procure from all parts necessaries and conveniences which they must now renounce; because, to find them, it is necessary to go more than an hundred and fifty leagues into the country. Were this scheme carried into execution, these honest Dutchmen would no longer be loudly and sincerely wishing that some nation would form a settlement in their neighbourhood, and furnish them with those articles that contribute to the happiness of life, and the pleasure of society. It would also, at the same time, extend the treasures of commerce, at the Bay of Agoa. These wishes, so contrary to their political interest, could not be gratified without hurting them. The Company have nothing to do

but

but to form here a proper eſtabliſhment. To the general profits of ſuch an inſtitution would be added thoſe of individuals, which could not fail to be of importance. They might, for example, cut down a certain tree, called *ſtinking wood*, and export it to Europe, where it would undoubtedly ſoon be preferred to every other kind employed by cabinet-makers.

The advantages which the Company and the colony might derive from this beautiful country, could not certainly have eſcaped the governor, who made a journey hither. But in ſettlements, the proſperity of which is at the mercy of a few united together, and intereſted in oppoſing every plan that would tend to diminiſh their profits, what is a governor? A paſſive being; indolent with reſpect to the general good, and who is actuated only by a regard to his private concerns. Conſenting to a kind of baniſhment for a certain time, he privately eſtabliſhes in his own mind, as the firſt article of his contract, that, as he muſt rapidly make a fortune, every method of procuring it is honourable and lawful. Full of theſe ideas, when he arrives at the ſeat of his government, where he finds every thing favour-

favourable to his views, he exerciſes his rapacity with impunity; when he returns to his own country, he inſults his fellow-citizens by inſolent pomp: and he undoubtedly never thinks of opening the eyes of his employers, concerning thoſe improvements and regulations which in a little time would increaſe the happineſs of a populous colony.

I am of opinion that colonies, under the management of excluſive companies, are like thoſe public carriages which circulate through all Europe, carrying paſſengers and goods at the ſame time; provided the latter arrive ſafe, the proprietors care very little whether the poor travellers who deſcend from the coach have their limbs broken or ſound.

In the neighbourhood of this bay I found means to increaſe my collection with ſeveral beautiful birds, and even with ſome new ſpecies, which were common here in the woods: but I wiſhed, above all, to procure one which more than once put my patience to the proof, and had like to have coſt me very dear. It was a bald buzzard*, of a moſt beautiful ſpecies. This bird, of the genus of the eagle,

* By ſome naturaliſts called the ſea eagle.

is almoſt as large as the oſpray. Every day I ſaw it hovering over my camp, but at ſuch a diſtance that it could not be reached by a ball. I however conſtantly obſerved its motions; and I made a perſon always keep watch, and never loſe ſight of it. One day that I had croſſed the Queur-Boom, while walking along the bank oppoſite to that on which my camp ſtood, I perceived a number of heads, fragments of large fiſhes, and the bones and remains of ſmall antelopes, ſtrewed on the ground, near the rotten trunk of an old tree. I immediately concluded that this muſt be the place where two of theſe bald-buzzards had eſtabliſhed their fiſhery, or at leaſt their ordinary haunt; and it was not long before I ſaw them ſoaring round in the air, at a great height. Without loſs of time I concealed myſelf in a thick buſh; but this ſtratagem was not executed with ſufficient alertneſs to deceive the piercing eyes of theſe two eagles. They doubtleſs obſerved me; for they did not deſcend. Next day, and for ſeveral days ſucceſſively, I returned to my ſtation, at break of day. I poſted myſelf in the thicket, but all my vigilance was ineffectual. This buſineſs was very laborious; becauſe, to go and return,

I was

I was obliged to paſs the river twice; and at theſe times it was neceſſary to wait for the ebbing of the tide.

Tired out at laſt, as I waſted my time without being able to ſucceed, I took two Hottentots with me; and croſſing the river, in the middle of the night, conducted them to a ſpot near the trunk of the old tree, where I made them dig a hole three feet wide and four deep. When it was made, I placed myſelf in it; and having ordered them to cover the hole over my head with a few ſticks, a piece of a mat, and ſome earth, I reſerved only a ſmall opening, ſufficiently large for me to put my fuſee through it, and to ſee the old trunk. I then deſired my people to return to the camp. Day approached, but the cruel birds did not make their appearance. The earth ſeeming to be newly thrown up, had no doubt rendered them ſuſpicious; and this was a circumſtance which I had not at firſt thought of. At the cloſe of the night, I came forth from my hole, and went to paſs a few hours at my camp; after which I returned, and interred myſelf as before. This expedient I continued for two days ſucceſſively, with much patience. During that interval, the ſun had dried the

earth, and made it all of one colour. About the middle of the third, I obſerved the female ſoaring above the tree, upon which ſhe ſoon alighted, with a very large fiſh in her talons. I inſtantly diſcharged my piece; and had the pleaſure of ſeeing her fall, flapping her wings: but before I could diſengage myſelf from my mat, and the earth which covered me, ſhe ſo far recovered her ſtrength as to fly; and, bruſhing the ſurface of the river, reached the other ſide, where ſhe expired.

The joy which I felt on finding myſelf in poſſeſſion of this bird was ſo great, that, without obſerving that the tide was up, I threw myſelf into the water, with my fuſee on my ſhoulder; and I was not ſenſible of my imprudence, till in the middle of the river I found myſelf up to the chin. To add to my misfortune, I was alone, and entirely unacquainted with ſwimming. Had I attempted to return, the rapidity of the current would have undoubtedly thrown me down. Without knowing what was to become of me, I purſued my way, as it were, mechanically; and I had the good fortune to reach the oppoſite bank: an inch more would have infallibly drowned me. I ruſhed upon my bald-

bald-buzzard; and the pleaſure of ſecuring my prey, ſoon effaced every remembrance of fear and danger. I was, however, obliged to pull off all my clothes, and to ſpread them out to dry: in the mean time I amuſed myſelf in examining my prize; and, when my clothes were perfectly dry, I returned without any danger to my habitation. When I arrived, I was told that ſeveral of my people were gone in purſuit of a buffaloe, which they had met with; and, towards evening, I ſaw them return loaded with the limbs of the animal, which they had cut up on the ſpot. Next morning, very early, I did not neglect to ſend in ſearch of the fragments, which they had left to attract birds of prey. This method procured me the male bald-buzzard; which differed from the female in nothing but the general diſtinction of carnivorous birds, that of being always a third ſmaller. I ſhall give a figure and deſcription of the latter, under the name of *Vocifer*.

The ſame morning, as I was ſitting calmly in my chair, at the entrance of my tent, having before me a table upon which I was diſſecting my bald-buzzard, an antelope, of that ſpecies called the *boſ-bock*, ſuddenly croſſed my

camp, and paſſed through my carriages; while my dogs, which had firſt ſeen it, and which endeavoured to oppoſe it, were not able to make it alter its courſe. After this alarm, it ran ſtraight towards a net extended to dry, at the ſide of my camp; tore it to pieces; carried away ſome fragments of it; and, purſued by my whole pack, threw itſelf precipitately into the river. At the ſame inſtant I ſaw nine wild dogs arrive, which had probably given chace to it, and which were following its traces. At the ſight of my camp, theſe animals ſtopped ſhort, and making a little tour, reached a ſmall hill, upon which I had poſted myſelf; and from which, as well as I, they could ſee their prey ſeized by my dogs and my Hottentots; who did every thing in their power to tear it from the teeth of the former, and to bring it to me alive. They indeed ſucceeded effectually, after having laſhed its legs. Nothing could be more pleaſant than to ſee the ſimple look of theſe wild dogs; which being ſtill ſpectators of this provoking ſcene, had not quitted the eminence; and, being ſeated on their rumps in a melancholy poſture, ſufficiently ſhewed by their impatient geſtures what ideas they entertained of our injuſtice,

injuſtice, and of their own right to the repaſt which we had deprived them of. I wiſhed much to catch one of them, and ſome of my people crept ſoftly along in order to reach them; but being more cunning than we, they ſuſpected their manœuvres, and made off full ſpeed. I ſent a bullet after them, to thank them for the ſervice they had rendered us; but, as it did not take effect, I might as well have ſaved myſelf the trouble. This antelope I attempted to preſerve, and to tame; but it was ſo wild, the ſight of my dogs inſpired it with ſo much fear, and it ſtruggled ſo much, and made ſo many violent motions, that it muſt infallibly have deſtroyed itſelf. To ſave it therefore from this torture, we killed and ate it.

This adventure, for more than eight days, afforded ſubject for my wits to exerciſe their genius on; and they laughed at the poor wild dogs for having ſtarted the game, to ſee themſelves ſo ſuddenly deprived of it.

It muſt however be allowed, that, had not my dogs been ſupported by my people, they would not have been able to ſecure the antelope; for, though they were more numerous than the wild dogs, the latter were ſtronger, fiercer, and more courageous. I ſhall after-

wards have occaſion to ſpeak of them, and to rectify a great may errors reſpecting them, which have been propagated and confirmed by men of the greateſt talents. But how can people ſpeak with any certainty of objects which they have never ſeen themſelves, eſpecially when they copy the relations of others who know them as little?

Until the 15th of June I formed ſeveral encampments in the neighbourhood of the Bay in different places. Reſolved to continue my journey into the country, between the chain of mountains and the ſea, I went to reconnoitre the way: I endeavoured, but without ſucceſs, to find a place where my carriages could eaſily paſs; for the foreſts were ſo extenſive, and ſo thick, that there was no poſſibility of penetrating through them. My Hottentots, on their part, were not more fortunate in their reſearches than I: we could abſolutely diſcover no outlet. I determined therefore to croſs the chain of mountains; but to accompliſh this, it was ſtill neceſſary that I ſhould find the beginning of a paſſage, where my unfortunate oxen might be able to keep their feet. In vain did I traverſe, run, and ſearch every where around; for nothing appeared

peared to my view but peaked rocks to whatever quarter I turned. Without knowing it, we had entangled ourſelves in a kind of hollow valley, without any opening, from which we could not get out but by returning the ſame way we had come. This method through neceſſity we were obliged to purſue; and we again found ourſelves at the wood of Poort, from which we had departed a month before.

Such is the happy inſtability of the human mind, that little is ſometimes wanting to reſtore it to its former tranquillity. This ſpot, to which I returned with the utmoſt regret, and which before ſeemed ſo barren and diſmal, all of a ſudden reſumed a new and ſmiling appearance. Having obſerved, as I walked along, the traces of a flock of elephants, which muſt have paſſed there the ſame day, nothing more was requiſite to baniſh all my chagrin, and to conſole me for the delay I had experienced in my route; we therefore erected our tents in that place.

Among my Hottentots there was one who had travelled thus far in his youth with his horde and family, who had not been long removed from it. As he had beſides a ſuperfi-

cial

cial knowledge of the country, I ſelected him, with four others; and, having put my camp in order, we departed all ſix, carrying with us ſome proviſions; and following the traces, which we never loſt ſight of even for a moment: but they led us on till night without ſeeing any thing. We then ſat down to ſupper very merrily, exhorting one another not to think too much of the enjoyments of our camp; and, having kindled a large fire, we ſtretched ourſelves out around it, on the cold hard ground.

Though each of us had affected to inſpire his companions with courage and patience, we were equally tormented with emotions of fear and uneaſineſs: none of us enjoyed a ſound ſleep: on the ſmalleſt breath of wind, or the leaſt quivering of a leaf, we ſtarted up to liſten, and began to prepare for our own preſervation. Night paſſed away amidſt theſe ſlight alarms; and at the break of day I rouſed my ſleepy companions by loud cries: little time was requiſite for them to be dreſſed; and a glaſs of ſtrong liquor revived their ſpirits, and made them forget the rude manner in which I had awakened them. We ſpent the ſecond day in great dejection; and we were not

not ſo ſucceſsful as on the firſt. In the evening we repeated the ſame ceremonies as before, but with this difference, that being perhaps become bolder, or even more confident, we hoped that an uninterrupted ſleep would recover us a little from our fatigue, and ſerve at leaſt to refreſh us. We were however diſturbed by a very ſudden alarm. Scarcely had my Hottentots been aſleep an hour, when a buffalo attracted by the light, approached cloſe to us; but as this animal is afraid of man, no ſooner did he obſerve us, than he was ſeized with terror, and inſtantly fled. The noiſe which he made in retreating precipitately through the buſhes, and the craſhing of the branches, awaked us; upon which we all ſtarted up, and having ſearched around for the ſpace of an hour, diſcharging our pieces at random, we returned to our fire. The third day was ſtill more diſaſtrous: the hiſtory of it I ſhall relate more at length, for it often recurs to my mind; and at preſent, as the fire of youth becomes cooler, it does not lead me into ſuch raſh enterprizes, and has given place to calmer ideas: the remembrance of it ſtill affects me, and makes me ſhudder.

Purſuing

Purſuing the traces of our animals without ever loſing ſight of them, we arrived at a very large open part of the foreſt, in which there were only a few ſhrubs, and ſome underwood. Having ſtopped here, one of my Hottentots climbed up a tree to get a better view; and caſting his eyes every where around, he made a ſign to us to be ſilent, by putting his finger to his mouth; and ſignified by his hand, which he opened and ſhut ſeveral times, what number of elephants he perceived. When he deſcended we held a council; and going to the leeward of them, that we might approach without being diſcovered, he conducted me through the buſhes ſo near, that he brought me quite cloſe to theſe enormous animals. I almoſt touched them, as I may ſay, and yet I did not obſerve them; though I can ſafely declare that my eyes were not faſcinated by fear. In ſuch ſituations one muſt run great riſks, and prepare for danger. I ſtood upon a ſmall eminence juſt above the elephant. In vain did my courageous Hottentot point it out with his finger; and twenty times repeat, in an eager and impatient tone, *there it is.* I ſaw nothing of it; for I caſt my eyes to a much greater diſtance, and never imagined that what

what I beheld below me could be any thing elſe than a rock, ſince the maſs I ſaw was entirely motionleſs. At length, however, a ſlight movement attracted my attention; and the head and tuſks of the animal, which eclipſed its enormous body, turned towards me. Without loſing this opportunity, or waſting my time in fine contemplations, I reſted my large fuſee on its pivot, and taking aim at the middle of its forehead, diſcharged my piece, upon which it inſtantly dropped down dead; whilſt about thirty more, ſtartled by the report, fled on all ſides. Nothing could be more amuſing than to ſee the motion of their large ears, which flapped about in proportion to the ſwiftneſs with which they ran: but this was only a prelude to a much more animated ſcene.

I was ſurveying them with great pleaſure, when I fired at one of them as it paſſed cloſe to us. By the excrements tinged with blood which it dropped, I judged that it was dangerouſly wounded, and we began to purſue it. Sometimes it fell, then got up, then fell again; but we were cloſe at its heels, and ſtill made it riſe by the ſhots which we diſcharged at it. On the fourteenth ſhot, it turned with great

fury

fury upon the Hottentot who had fired; whilſt another diſcharged a fifteenth, which only ſerved to increaſe its rage; and, as it advanced rapidly towards us, he called out to us to be upon our guard. I was only twenty-five paces diſtant from it; loaded with my fuſee, which weighed thirty pounds, beſides ammunition: and I was more diſadvantageouſly ſituated than my people; who, not having gone ſo far, could more eaſily eſcape the avenging trunk, and extricate themſelves from danger. I therefore betook myſelf to my heels: but the elephant, at every ſtep, gained upon me; ſo that, more dead than alive, for only one at that moment ran up to defend me, I found no reſource but to lie down cloſe to the trunk of an old tree, which was extended on the ground. Scarcely had I reached my lurking place, when the animal arrived, leaped over the trunk, and, being much frightened with the noiſe of my people, whom he heard before him, he ſtopped ſhort to liſten. From the place where I lay I could have eaſily fired, as my fuſee very luckily was loaded; but the animal had already received ſo many ſhots without effect, and it was in ſo unfavourable a poſition, that, deſpairing to kill it by one diſcharge, I remained

mained motionleſs waiting for my fate. I however watched it, reſolved to ſell my life at a dear rate, ſhould it attempt to return towards me. My people, uneaſy for their maſter, called to me from all quarters; but I was very cautious not to give them any anſwer. Convinced by my ſilence that they had loſt their chief, they redoubled their cries, and were filled with the utmoſt deſpair. The elephant, frightened, immediately turned round, and a ſecond time jumped over the tree, ſix paces below the ſpot where I was, without perceiving me; upon which ſtarting up, fired with impatience in my turn, and wiſhing to ſhew to my Hottentots ſome ſigns of life, I diſcharged my fuſee in its poſteriors. The animal then entirely diſappeared; leaving every where as it paſſed certain traces of the cruel ſituation to which we had reduced it.

The picture is not yet finiſhed; gratitude and friendſhip demand the laſt touch. Worthy man, who poſſeſſeſt a feeling heart, the moment is now come when I muſt erect to thy memory that monument which I promiſed thee. Thou canſt never comprehend with what pleaſure I diſcharge this duty: may it confer ſome honour on my travels,

and even ornament the relation of them. It will never reach thee in the boſom of thy peaceful deſarts: but thou wert ſenſible of my tears, and thy fraternal arms have preſſed me to thy boſom. Whether thou art alive or numbered with the dead, I ſtill feel it. The remembrance of me will be preſerved longer and more glorioufly among thy ſavage hordes, than by empty trophies reared by the vanity of man. I confeſs myſelf unworthy of it, and I renounce it. But do thou, generous Klaas, young pupil of nature, whoſe virtuous mind was never corrupted by our elegant inſtitutions, preſerve always the remembrance of thy friend. It is to thee alone that he ſtill addreſſes his tears and his tender regret.

When ſtretched out by the trunk of an old tree, at the mercy of a furious animal, which with its wandering eye was ſearching for me every where around; and which, if it had turned towards me, might have deſtroyed me on the ſpot—it was then that my heart, quite palpitating with terror, was opened to the ſenſations of a tender ſentiment, inſpired by one of thoſe people, of whom poliſhed nations never ſpeak but with horror or contempt; whom, without knowing, they conſider as

atrocious

trocious beings, the refuſe of nature; in a word, by an African ſavage, a Caffre, a Hottentot.

When I left the Cape, Mr. Boers gave me this man, as a perſon upon whoſe bravery and fidelity I could depend. He had expreſsly charged him never to abandon me, whether dead or alive; promiſing to reward him handſomely, if, on my return to the Cape ſound and ſafe, I ſhould give a ſatisfactory teſtimony reſpecting his behaviour. It was this man that never quitted me for a moment; and who, having ſeen me ſuddenly diſappear, hurried to my aſſiſtance though he ſought for me in vain. I heard him through the buſhes call me with a faint voice, which indicated his anxiety; then addreſs himſelf to my dejected and confounded companions, who followed at a little diſtance, and reproach them with their timidity, when ſurrounded by danger. "What "will become of us?" ſaid he, in his own expreſſive and affecting language—"what will "become of us, ſhould we have the misfortune "to find our unhappy maſter trod to death "under the feet of the elephant? Dare you "ever return to the Cape without him? With "what face will you appear before the fiſcal?

" Whatever excuſe you may make, you will " be conſidered as baſe aſſaſſins: it is you in- " deed who have deſtroyed him. Return to " the camp; plunder and diſperſe his effects; " do whatever you chooſe. As for me, I " ſhall never quit this place: dead or alive " I muſt find my unfortunate maſter; I have " reſolved to periſh along with him."—Theſe words were uttered with ſighs and lamentations ſo affecting, that, even in the moſt critical moment, I perceived the tears ſtart from my eyes, and the tendereſt ſenſations ſucceed to terror. My firing my fuſee was a ſignal of joy; and I found myſelf in an inſtant ſurrounded by my people, and in the arms of my dear Klaas, who ſqueezed me ſo cloſely that I could ſcarcely diſengage my body from him. This faithful youth in turns kiſſed my perſon and clothes; while his companions, with the utmoſt ſorrow, and in a ſuppliant attitude, ſtretched out their hands towards me, as if to implore my pardon. I took care to conſole them; for I was too highly gratified by this ſcene to diſturb it by uſeleſs words or reproaches. From that day, the happieſt in my life, in which I knew the pleaſure of being ſincerely beloved, and from no motives of intereſt, I conſidered the

worthy

worthy Klaas as my equal, my brother, and the confidant of all my pleaſures, misfortunes, and ſecrets: he has more than once calmed my diſquietude, and revived my drooping courage. If he afterwards ſhewed any ſigns of weakneſs which were dangerous and contrary to the good order I had eſtabliſhed among my people, this teſtimony of his attachment gave him ſo much power over me, that I could never allow myſelf to ſhew ſeverity towards him, or even to alarm his heart.

I drew from nature the portrait of this brave Hottentot; and the faithful and ſtriking reſemblance here given of him was executed under my inſpection, and engraved from my own deſign.

As night was approaching, we haſtened towards the elephant which I had been ſo fortunate as to kill with one ſhot: and indeed nothing could have been more ſeaſonable; for our preſence drove away ſome vultures, and ſeveral ſmall carnivorous animals, which, without loſs of time, had begun to devour it. We kindled a number of fires; and, as our proviſions ran ſhort, my people cut a few ſteaks from the elephant, and prepared for me ſome ſlices of the trunk. This was the firſt time I had ever taſted ſuch food;

and I firmly reſolved it ſhould not be the laſt, for I found it moſt delicious. Klaas aſſured me that, when I taſted the feet, I ſhould ſoon forget the trunk; and, in order to convince me, he promiſed me a moſt luſcious breakfaſt, which he inſtantly ordered to be prepared. The four feet of the animal were then cut off: a hole about three or four feet ſquare was made in the earth, and filled with burning coals; and the whole being covered with dry wood, a large fire was kept up in it during the greater part of the night. When the hole was ſufficiently heated, every thing was taken from it. Klaas placed in it the four feet of the animal, covering them with hot aſhes; afterwards with coals, and ſome ſmall pieces of wood: and this fire was ſuffered to remain till day-light. All that night I was the only perſon who ſlept; for, according to the orders given by Klaas, my people kept watch. They informed me that they had heard many buffaloes and elephants ranging around. This we expected, as the whole foreſt was filled with them; but the number of our fires prevented them from coming to diſturb us.

At breakfaſt my people brought me one of the elephant's feet; which had ſwelled ſo much

by

by its being baked, that I could ſcarcely diſtinguiſh its form. It however looked well, and exhaled ſo ſweet a ſmell that I was eager to taſte it. I indeed found that it was food fit for a king. I had often heard the feet of bears boaſted of; but I could not conceive how an animal ſo heavy and coarſe as the elephant could produce ſo tender and delicate fleſh. "Never," ſaid I to myſelf— "never can our modern Luculli diſplay upon "their tables a diſh like that which I now "enjoy. In vain with their riches do they "change and reverſe the ſeaſons; in vain do "they boaſt of laying all nations under con- "tribution: their luxury has never yet at- "tained to this gratification; bounds are pre- "ſcribed to their ſenſuality." And I devoured without bread my elephant's foot; while my Hottentots, ſeated near me, regaled themſelves with other parts, which they found no leſs excellent. Theſe particulars may appear childiſh, or at leaſt indifferent, to a great many readers; but it is neceſſary to relate every thing, ſince ſo many whimſical and abſurd notions have hitherto been entertained reſpecting this ſingular country which I was traverſing.

The reſt of the morning we employed in plucking out its tuſks; as it was a female, they did not weigh twenty pounds: the animal herſelf was eight feet three inches in height. My people then loaded themſelves with all the proviſions they could carry, and we ſet out to return to our camp. We at firſt propoſed to follow the one we had left alive, and which had been wounded in ſo cruel a manner; but ſo many had arrived during the night, that their traces were entirely confounded: we were, beſides, ſo fatigued, that being afraid to diſcourage theſe poor people, I reſolved to lead them back as ſoon as poſſible.

The Hottentots poſſeſs the faculty of ſight in the moſt exquiſite degree; and this advantage is ſeconded by a very wonderful attention. Upon the drieſt ground, where, notwithſtanding its weight, the elephant leaves no traces perceptible to a common eye, amidſt withered leaves ſcattered and driven here and there by the wind, the African can diſtinguiſh the prints of this animal's feet: he ſees the path it has purſued, and that which he muſt follow to come up with it. A green leaf reverſed or torn off, a bud deſtroyed, the manner in which a ſmall branch is broken, and a thou-

ſand

ſand other circumſtances, are to him never-failing marks, whilſt the moſt expert European hunter would loſe all his reſources. As for me, I could diſcover nothing; though I had beſtowed much time and attention upon this divining part of one of the moſt delightful kinds of hunting. I confeſs that I was ſo fond of it, that I did not diſdain to enter into the minutiæ of it. I acquired inſtruction more and more every day; and, when I ranged the woods with my people, I ſpent whole days in aſking queſtions; and I had ſometimes occaſion to put my precepts immediately into practice.

When we returned to the camp, my old Swanepoel told me that, during my abſence, he had been every night diſturbed by flocks of elephants, which had approached ſo near that they heard them break the branches of the trees, and browſe on the leaves. I made a tour through the foreſt; and I indeed ſaw a great many young trees broken, branches ſtripped of their leaves, and young ſhoots devoured.

This was enough to induce me again to take the field; eſpecially as my people had been allowed ſufficient time to repoſe. I however

choſe rather to go and ſurpriſe theſe animals in the day time, than to wait for them in my tent during the night. In the morning, therefore, I ſet out; but I was obliged to wander to a great diſtance. From the top of an eminence, at the edge of the wood, I perceived four in ſome very thick buſhes: and taking care to get to the leeward of them, I approached with great precaution; ſurveying them with much pleaſure for half an hour, while they were eating the extremities of the branches. Before they took them in their mouths, they beat them three or four times with their trunks; in order, as I imagine, to ſhake off the ants, and other inſects. After this ceremony, they always graſped with their trunks all the branches they could ſurround; and, conveying them to their mouths always on the left ſide, ſwallowed them without much chewing. I remarked that they preferred thoſe branches which were beſt furniſhed with leaves; and that they were, beſides, extremely fond of a yellow fruit, when it was ripe, which in the country is called a cherry.

When I had ſufficiently examined their method of feeding, I fired at the head of the one neareſt to me, which I killed; and in leſs than

than ten minutes I in the like manner extended the whole three on the ground. *.

We imagined that there were no more: but a great noiſe near us having made us turn round, one of my Hottentots, who obſerved a ſmall elephant, killed it. I was very ſorry for his raſhneſs, and reprimanded him ſeverely. As this animal was not larger than a calf of five or ſix months old, I might have eaſily tamed it.

Among the four I had killed, there was a young male ſeven feet one inch in height. Its tuſks weighed only about fifteen pounds each.

The largeſt of the reſt, which were females, was only eight feet five inches in height; and their tuſks, in general, did not exceed fifteen pounds each.

A ſingularity which aſtoniſhed both me and my Hottentots, who aſſured me they had never before ſeen it—and which naturaliſts, according to their laudable cuſtom of receiving as certain and invariable principles only what is related

* When the elephants are in a flock, and purſued, if the firſt that is fired at falls, one may be certain of killing all the reſt, one after the other. I ſhall ſpeak of this ſingularity hereafter.

in books, and by thoſe who travel in their cloſets, will probably doubt—is, that the female, which we judged to be the mother of the young male, had only one teat, ſituated in the middle of her breaſt. It was full of milk, ſome of which I ſqueezed into my hand, and found it to be very ſweet; but the taſte of it was far from being agreeable: this milk iſſued from eight ſmall orifices, very perceptible and diſtinct. The reſt had two dugs, placed generally under the breaſt, of the ſame form as thoſe of women; and of ſuch a ſize, that more than one lady of pleaſure who has loſt a little of her plumpneſs, might have envied this charm in my female elephants.

The young male which my imprudent Hottentot killed, had no tuſks; and when I opened its lips a little, at the place from which they ſhould have grown I perceived only a ſmall white knob, of the ſize of a ſwan ſhot: its fleſh was extremely delicate. In one of the females I hoped to diſcover a fœtus, but I was deceived. I found their ſtomachs filled with a very limpid liquor, ſome of which my people drank, and which I alſo had the curioſity to put to my mouth; but it was ſo diſagreeably nauſeous, that to deſtroy the taſte of it,

and

and to refreſh myſelf, I went and drank from a ſpring that happened to be at the diſtance of a quarter of a league from the place where we were.

Having left my people buſy in cutting up the elephants, when I returned from the ſpring, at the end of half an hour, I was much ſurpriſed to perceive nobody. I could not conjecture what had obliged them to leave their work; nor could I conceive the cauſe of this ſudden deſertion. Beginning to bawl out as loudly as I could, in order to recal them, in caſe they ſhould be near enough to hear me, I was much aſtoniſhed when I ſaw them all four come out of the elephant's belly, into which they had entered to detach the interior fibres: theſe, next to the feet and the trunk, are the moſt delicate morſels.

I diſpatched my fifth Hottentot to tell Swanepoel to ſend me a yoke of oxen and a chain. As we had cut off the four heads when they arrived, we began by putting the chain through them; but it required no little art and addreſs to make the oxen approach, and to yoke them to the chain. They ſnorted violently, turned away their noſtrils, and ſtarted back with horror. By ſtratagem, however,

we were able to bring them back; and they were yoked to the four heads, which they dragged to my tent, acroſs ſands, duſt, and buſhes ſtained with their blood: a horrid ſpectacle without doubt, but ſtill neceſſary; as the roads were ſo bad that a waggon could never have been conducted to the ſpot. But the caſe was ſtill worſe, when, being deſirous of returning to the elephants, near which I had left a part of my people, I could not make my horſe paſs thoſe places which were tinged with their blood. I was obliged to take another route; and when we arrived near the elephants, as ſoon as he ſaw and ſmelled them, he capered and kicked in ſo violent a manner, that he threw me; and making off full ſpeed, by a very long compaſs returned to the camp.

I am again about to touch upon one of thoſe moments which do not twice occur in life. With what ſenſations is my ſoul agitated! I ſhall curſe pleaſure, and all its inventions. One muſt be a different being to combine ſo many ideas and various ſentiments. He who experiences them cannot ſupport them; he is agitated, oppreſſed, and borne down by them.

Being obliged to return on foot, I perceived through the trees a ſtrange Hottentot on horſe-back, taking the neareſt way to come up with me. Having ſtopped to wait for him, I found that he was an expreſs ſent by Mr. Boers. He had received orders to enquire concerning me in every part of the colonies through which I might have paſſed; and to follow my traces, when, quitting the known roads, I ſhould enter the diſtant country. This man had faithfully executed his commiſſion; and, guided by the ruts of my wheels, had viſited all my different encampments, and thence proceeded till he found me.

Before I quitted the Cape, Mr. Boers had promiſed that if he received any letters for me from Europe during my abſence, whatever route I might purſue, or wherever I might be, he would take care to convey them to me. This reſpectable friend kept his word; and in the packet which his Hottentot put into my hands I found ſeveral which bore the French ſtamp. As theſe were the firſt accounts tranſmitted to me from Europe ſince my departure, it would be difficult to deſcribe with what impatience and agitation I received them from the meſſenger. Uncertain what

I was

I was to learn from them, I had ſcarcely ſtrength ſufficient to open them; and it may be readily gueſſed that I did not wait until I had returned to the camp, to ſatisfy myſelf on this ſubject. They were all from my deareſt friends, and my wife; my eyes ran over them quicker than lightning: but I every where found cauſe for being happy; for I obſerved that I was beloved and regretted. The tendereſt friendſhip came to ſeek me in the boſom of my deſarts, and to overwhelm my heart with its delights. I could neither ſpeak, ſigh, nor weep—I could only remain in the ſpot where I was, ready to die with joy; but I gradually recovered my ſenſes, and returned to my camp.

When theſe firſt tranſports had ſubſided, I ſhut myſelf up in my tent; and giving free vent to my tears, which afforded me relief, I immediately began to write anſwers to theſe letters: I dated mine from *the camp of Auteniqua, the day on which I had killed four elephants.* One of theſe letters, which contained ſome intereſting details, addreſſed to a literary friend, was ridiculouſly handed about ſome years ago through Paris; and was afterwards loſt. I there mentioned ſeveral diſcoveries which con-

contradict opinions hitherto received; and of which I ſhall give an account in my deſcription of animals.

At night, when my camp was put in order, and the fires kindled, I placed myſelf, as uſual, with my papers before me on a piece of plank, while my Hottentots ſat around me.—" My " friends," ſaid I, " you behold one of your " countrymen, whom Mr. Boers has ſent to " enquire in what ſituation I am; and to " know whether your behaviour be agree- " able to what he expects from you, and to " your duty towards me. Behold, added I, " ſhewing them the firſt letter that I put my " hand upon—behold the anſwer which I " have written; and in which I tell him that " you have hitherto behaved like honeſt and " brave people; and that, during the eight " months we have been travelling together, I " have conſidered you as the faithful compa- " nions of my enterpriſe and labours. I tell " him that he needs not be uneaſy on my ac- " count, becauſe I have the ſame confidence " in you as in myſelf; and that Mr. Boer's " meſſenger, on his return to the Cape, may " be able to aſſure your friends and families " that you are well, and that you are con-

" tented

" tented and happy, I wiſh him to be a wit-
" neſs of the amicable manner in which I treat
" you; and for this reaſon I ſhall diſtribute
" to each of you an excellent roll of tobacco:
" I hope, therefore, that all your pipes will
" be inſtantly lighted."---When my diſtribu-
tion was finiſhed, each retired to his place, and ſmoked at his eaſe.

I was ſo overjoyed with the teſtimonies of affection which I received from my relations and friends, with their ſincere proteſtations of attachment, and with the accurate informa-tion which they all gave me in their letters, that, intoxicated with pleaſure, forgetting Africa, my hunting excurſions, my moſt beau-tiful birds, and my elegant collections, and in a word for that moment becoming a child, I deviſed in order to amuſe me what might among certain ranks be called a *feſtival*, and by thoſe of an inferior claſs a *farce*.

I had been too generous in diſtributing my tobacco; and my people had received more than was ſufficient to intoxicate them, had I permitted them to uſe it as they pleaſed: but I contrived a method to prevent them. Ob-ſerving that the third pipe was drawing to a cloſe, as ſoon as I had drank my tea I ordered

a ſmall

a ſmall box to be brought me, which I placed on my knees. I opened it, and never did any quack ſhew more myſterious dexterity; I drew from it that noble and melodious inſtrument unknown perhaps at Paris, but very common in ſome of the provinces, and which is ſeen in the hands of almoſt every ſchool-boy and of the vulgar---in a word, a Jews-harp. Scarcely had I begun one of thoſe airs played on the Pont-Neuf, when I ſaw every body with the utmoſt ſilence lay down their pipes, and ſtare at me with their mouths wide open, their arms half extended, and their fingers ſpread, in the attitude of thoſe people whom ſome old woman has bewitched. With their ears attentive, and their heads motionleſs, and inclined to one ſide, they did not loſe the leaſt note of the inſtrument; till, not being able to reſtrain their enthuſiaſm, each inſenſibly quitted his place, to enjoy the pleaſure nearer. I imagined every moment that I ſhould ſee them all together proſtrate themſelves before the god who performed this wonder; whilſt I could hardly keep from burſting out into a fit of laughter, which would have ſoon diſſipated the whole charm. When I had done, I laid hold of the perſon who was neareſt me, and put the

wonderful lute into his hands: I found it very difficult to make him comprehend the method of uſing it; but having at length made him do it ſome how or other, I ſent him back to his place. As I much doubted whether the reſt would be contented if they had not one each, I diſtributed as many Jews-harps as I had Hottentots; and being all collected, ſome performing well, others badly, and ſome wretchedly, they regaled me with a concert that might have frightened the Furies. Even my oxen, diſturbed by their horrid humming, began to bellow; and all of a ſudden my camp became ſuch a ſcene of noiſe and riot as was perhaps never ſeen. In every part it exhibited the true picture of a holiday.

By the air of ſtupefaction which they exhibited when I myſelf tried the ridiculous inſtrument, I was perſuaded that ſimple minds may be ſtruck with aſtoniſhment by very ſimple means; and notwithſtanding all that hiſtory relates of the great talents of Orpheus, and of the wonders performed by his muſic, I am always inclined to allow much honour to thoſe poets who have celebrated this harmonious lyre, which their imagination alone has conſecrated.

When I was ſufficiently ſatisfied with the

melody

melody of mine, being afraid that theſe pleaſantries might be changed into very ſerious alarms; and that my oxen, which had not yet forgotten the elephants heads, might abſolutely be frightened, and run away, I made a ſign with my hand that I had ſomething more to ſay, and immediately the noiſe ceaſed. "My "dear friends," added I, in a ſimple and affectionate tone, "I have regaled you with "the beſt tobacco you ever taſted; I have "made you acquainted with a wonderful in-"ſtrument: we are now going to terminate "this delightful entertainment with a few "bumpers of the beſt French brandy; and "we ſhall drink to the health of our families "and friends."

This, as I have ſaid, was a real holiday; and, even to my domeſtic animals, all muſt ſhare in the general frolic, and act a part in our orgies. Kees at this moment was cloſe by my ſide; a ſtation which he was remarkably fond of, and which he never failed every evening to aſſume. Reared like a child of the family, I had almoſt ſpoiled him; for I never eat or drank any thing without allowing him part of it. If I ſometimes happened to forget him, as he was a ſworn enemy to my abſence of

thought, he took great care to rouſe me from my reveries by patting my hand, or ſmacking his lips. I have already ſaid that he was remarkably gluttonous; his temperament led him to extremes; for he was equally fond of milk, and of ſtrong liquors. I never gave him any of the latter but in a plate, which I generally ordered to be placed before him; as I obſerved that every time he had drank it from a glaſs, his precipitation made him take as much by the noſe as by the mouth, ſo that he coughed and ſneezed for whole hours, which incommoded him very much, and might have at length cauſed him to break ſome blood veſſel.

He was then on the ground cloſe by me, waiting till his allowance ſhould be ſerved up to him; and following with his eyes the bottle which was paſſing round, and which ſtopped at each of my Hottentots. With what impatience did he wait for his turn! How ſtrongly did he expreſs by his motions and looks that he feared the cruel bottle would be emptied too ſoon, and would not reach him! But, alas! the unfortunate animal, while licking his lips by anticipation, little knew that he was going to taſte it for the laſt time. But be not dejected, O tender reader! My worthy Kees did not periſh,

periſh, and my brandy was ſaved for the future.

Having finiſhed my diſpatches, and incloſed them in their laſt cover, at the moment when he beheld with ſatisfaction that the bottle had performed its round, it came into my head to deceive his expectation by a trick, without any other motive than to ſurpriſe him, and to amuſe myſelf. His allowance had been juſt poured into the plate; and, whilſt he was preparing to taſte it, I lighted at my candle a ſlip of paper, which I imperceptibly conveyed under his belly: the brandy inſtantly caught fire; Kees ſent forth a ſhrill cry, and leaped to the diſtance of ten paces from me. I tried to recal him, by offering him a thouſand careſſes; but, following the dictates of his own paſſion and anger, he immediately diſappeared, and retired to reſt. Night being now pretty far advanced. I received the compliments and thanks of my people; and all of us ſlept very ſoundly.

I muſt obſerve that, after this terrible fear into which poor Kees was thrown, all the means I employed to make the animal forget what had paſſed, and to bring him back to his favourite liquor, were entirely fruitleſs. He

never would taſte a drop of it; on the contrary, he ſeemed to have conceived an implacable averſion to it. When any of my people, for their amuſement only, ſhewed him the bottle, he muttered between his teeth: and ſometimes when it was within his reach he would give it a blow; and, inſtantly climbing a tree, there ſhew his diſpleaſure in perfect ſecurity.

Next day, after having properly rewarded Mr. Boers's intelligent commiſſioner, I delivered my diſpatches to him, and ordered him to ſet out on his return.

In the morning I began to diſſect the head of one of the elephants, in which I left the grinders and the tuſks. During this operation, ſeveral of my people, who had gone to procure proviſions, brought back abundance of fleſh, being ſome of the moſt ſucculent parts of the four elephants, which they cut into very long and thin ſlices, in order that, being expoſed to the ſun according to our uſual cuſtom, they might dry ſooner. Some broke the bones into ſmall pieces, and put them in our two kettles; after which they threw boiling water upon them: in proportion as the greaſe melted, it floated on the ſurface; and being collected,

my people put it into bladders, and ſome of the inteſtines, the better to preſerve it. A Hottentot never neglects to make this proviſion; for, beſides what he daily uſes at his toilette, he employs it alſo in cooking different diſhes. As for us, we never could find too much of it, as we were obliged to greaſe the wheels and traces of our waggons; which without this precaution, would have been ſoon ſo much dried by the ſun as to be unfit for ſervice. I myſelf uſed it for candles and for my night lamp, which waſted a great deal: for want of ſpun cotton I made wicks of my neckcloths.

The preparing of this fat took us up a conſiderable time: and the operation was not quite finiſhed, when ſome of my people came to inform me that they had obſerved an enormous print of an elephant's foot, at the diſtance of an hundred paces from my tent. As the traces were quite freſh, I concluded this monſtrous animal could not have gone far; and I immediately ſet out in ſearch of it. We ranged the foreſt with great care; and having come up with it at the end of half an hour, I took aim at it in the proper place: but I was much ſurpriſed not to ſee it fall; my fuſee, in all

probability, muſt not have been ſufficiently loaded, or the animal was an impenetrable rock. However, when it found itſelf wounded, it ruſhed towards us with great fury, as we expected; but the buſhes being thick, and ſerving us as a kind of rampart, it could do nothing elſe than ſtamp the earth, and ſhew its rage in vain. It loſt a great deal of blood; but it appeared, from the ſwiftneſs with which it fled, that it would be of no avail to purſue it. I was extremely ſorry for this diſappointment, as it was the largeſt I had ever before ſeen. It was at leaſt thirteen feet in height; and, to judge by the eye, its tuſks could not have weighed leſs than an hundred and twenty pounds each.

When our proviſions were thoroughly dried and packed up, we departed, in order to return once more towards the fatal Kayman's Hole, where I had paſſed on the 30th of April, two months before. My Hottentots, whom I had ſent to reconnoitre, having informed me that we could croſs the chain of mountains at one called the *Devil's Head*, we purſued our courſe that way; and this gave me an opportunity of reviſiting the place of my encampment at Pampoen-Kraal, upon which

which I once more caſt a look of regret.—When we arrived at the bottom of the mountain I ordered the elephant's head I had diſſected, its tuſks, and all my preſerved birds and inſects, to be put upon one of the carriages; and again leaving my camp to the care of faithful ſervants, I repaired with my waggon to Mr. Mulder's houſe; for, as I was obliged to return in order to find a paſſage, I had approached very near to his habitation. Having engaged to tranſmit my packet and freſh letters to Mr. Boers by the firſt opportunity, I at length took leave of this reſpectable family, whom I was never again to ſee, and went back to my camp.

Next morning, very early, we aſcended the mountain; not without much difficulty and fatigue. But this was nothing in compariſon of what we experienced in deſcending on the other ſide: the view of it indeed frightened me. As ſoon as we perceived it, we all looked at one another without uttering a ſingle ſyllable, as people unexpectedly caught in a trap: we could not however remain on the ſummit; and it was neceſſary that we ſhould deſcend either on the one ſide or the other. If we eſcaped from Charybdis, we were ſtill

expoſed

THE UNITED PRESBYTERIAN MISSION LIBRARY

expoſed to the danger of falling into Scylla. Always perſuaded that patience and precaution will overcome the greateſt obſtacles, I could not believe that this enterprize would be more difficult for my caravan, than the paſſage of the Alps had formerly been to numerous armies; and I immediately prepared, as one may ſay, for taking this dangerous leap. I took care to make my carriages deſcend one after the other; and that they ſhould be each drawn by no more than two oxen. I cauſed the firſt to advance in good order, eſcorted by all my people: but we were obliged to paſs over pointed rocks, detached one from the other; which, forming ſo many high ſteps, gave the waggon ſuch jolts, as almoſt broke it to pieces. This however was not what appeared to us to be moſt dangerous; for, by the means of ropes affixed to the wheels, we raiſed them up, or ſuffered them to roll, as occaſion might require: it was the ſmooth places, and the ſlippery declivities that made us ſhudder. At ever moment I thought I ſaw the carriage and the oxen hurried to the brink of the precipice; while, on the ſide oppoſite to the declivities, we were pulling with all our force the ropes faſtened to the waggon. Our addreſs being crowned

crowned with complete ſucceſs, we aſcended to bring down the other two carriages; and, after a conſiderable time, the whole caravan arrived ſafe at the bottom of the mountain. It appeared to me that Nature had oppoſed this barrier, as an obſtacle to prevent me from entering on this new country; and that it was here ſhe had concealed her moſt beautiful treaſures: on this account I had been ſo much the more incited to overcome every thing that ſtood in my way. I knew that this route from Auteniqua to the Ange-Kloof was conſidered by the natives as impracticable; and that no perſon before me had ever attempted it with carriages. This was ſufficient to pique my vanity; and I had the good fortune to paſs theſe rocks: but, as if it had been neceſſary that puniſhment ſhould immediately follow ſuch a raſh attempt, I found myſelf in a moſt frightful and gloomy deſart.

This was no longer the delightful and fertile country of Auteniqua: the mountain which we had croſſed, or rather from which we had precipitated ourſelves, formed a wall of ſeparation between it and us for ever. It no longer preſented thoſe majeſtic foreſts which we had ſo long admired; for the whole back

back part of the chain was hideous and bare, deſtitute of trees, and without the leaſt appearance of verdure. Another chain, parallel to this, ſeemed involuntarily to bear a few paltry woods, which had ſome reſemblance to that named *Wage-Boom*. This wood, by incloſing the country, and leaving only one opening, has made the name of *Ange-Kloof* be given to this long valley.

My intention being to direct my courſe towards the north, I continued my journey for ſeven hours, keeping along that curſed valley; and we again croſſed the Queur-Boom, which here is but a moderate ſtream; whereas two months before it had made me tremble, when, to ſearch for my bald-buzzard, I threw myſelf into it at its mouth with too much precipitation, and narrowly eſcaped being drowned. Purſuing our melancholy route, after ſeveral encampments no leſs tedious, and a march of twenty-two hours, I paſſed another river, called, and very juſtly, *Krom-Rivier*, or the Crooked River. It formed ſo many turns and windings, that we continually found it in our way: I croſſed it ten times. In proportion as we advanced, the two chains of mountains ſeemed to approach each other on purpoſe, and

the

the country to become conſiderably narrower. The valley was now only a marſhy hollow; which, for full ſix leagues, occaſioned great fatigue to my oxen. We once more had a view of the *Krom-Rivier*; but this was for the laſt time: it took its courſe towards the eaſt, where it throws itſelf into the ſea; and we at length turned altogether towards the north. Here I left one of my horſes that was ſick, and which could not follow us; as I was unwilling to wait in hope of a cure, which perhaps might not ſucceed. I thought it would be much better to leave the care of his preſervation to nature.

Along the Ange-Kloof there are a few wretched houſes, which have more reſemblance to the dens of wild beaſts than to the habitations of men. The inhabitants breed very few cattle. When the eaſt wind blows acroſs this wild country, it is exceſſively cold: I was ſenſible of it from the very firſt to the laſt day. Every morning we had ice and white froſts. I do not exactly know the length of this diſmal valley; but I am certain that I employed forty-ſix hours in going through it.

After advancing ſeven or eight leagues, I croſſed *Diep-Rivier*, the Deep River; and ten leagues

leagues farther, on the 7th of Auguſt, we encamped upon the borders of that of *Gamtoos*. It derives its name from an unfortunate captain who in a ſtorm was ſhipwrecked near its mouth.

Half an hour before we arrived here, we were obliged to deſcend another very ſteep and dangerous mountain, by which the bellies of two of my oxen burſt, ſo that their bowels came out. This loſs was occaſioned by the perſon who conducted my ſecond waggon, and who had imprudently quitted it.

The beautiful aſpect of this new country made us ample amends for the melancholy moments we had ſeveral days experienced, amidſt the deteſtable roads and the ice of the valley of the *Ange-Kloof*.

The firſt night I encamped, towards midnight, before I had fallen aſleep in my tent, I thought I heard an unuſual noiſe: and liſtening with attention, I found I was not deceived; for I could diſtinguiſh the ſound of ſhouting and ſinging, which ſeemed to proceed from no great diſtance. I immediately called my people, who told me that they alſo heard a confuſed noiſe; but we did not know whether it was occaſioned by Hottentots or Caffres. I had

had great reaſon to be afraid of the latter; not that they thirſt more after human blood, as ignorant writers have ſaid; but becauſe the cruel manner in which they are treated by the planters, incites them more to war, and becauſe the right of avenging injuries is natural to man. I ſhall ſoon relate ſeveral facts, which will prove, better than vain reaſonings, whether a ſavage or an European is the moſt barbarous.

As it was probable that I might be confounded among the victims of their vengeance, I ordered all my people to be under arms, and we removed to ſome diſtance from our camp. The farther we marched the noiſe became more diſtinct; and we obſerved ſome fires. I could not however perſuade myſelf that they were Caffres; for they would have betrayed themſelves; artifice in vain borrows the darkneſs of night, it muſt alſo borrow its ſilence.

Having placed myſelf in ambuſh, that I might be able to ſurpriſe them, in caſe they ſhould paſs that way to plunder my camp, I detached two of my people to take a nearer view of them; who immediately returned to inform me that we had been alarmed without

out any cauſe; and that they were only a horde of Hottentots, who were ſinging and making merry. This intelligence freed me from my uneaſineſs, and I was even happy in my adventure, which ſeemed to promiſe next morning a very intereſting interview. We therefore returned to our camp, and ſlept very ſoundly.

Early in the morning I was again awakened by a warbling, which afforded me no leſs pleaſure. It proceeded from birds which I did not know, and which I had never before heard. I found them moſt beautiful. I was dazzled by the brilliant and variable plumage of the copper-coloured ſtarling, the amethyſt-coloured throat of the certhia flaveola*, the courou-coucou†, the king's-hunter, and of a great many others: I obſerved alſo ſeveral ſpecies which I had never before ſeen.

Game appeared to me to be very abundant in this place. I ſaw, above all, innumerable flocks of pheaſants, and a few of thoſe antelopes called bos-bock, paſs before me. The facility I found in procuring all theſe animals,

* In the original *ſucrier*; called alſo by Briſſon *grimperau*; and by Sir Hans Sloan, in his Natural Hiſtory of Jamaica, *the black and yellow bird.*

† *Curucui*, a Braſilian bird. *Trogon Linn.* T.

of

of which I had never ſeen ſo great plenty any where, inſpired me with the greateſt joy.

Whilſt I amuſed myſelf with firing at the birds, I permitted my Hottentots to go and pay a viſit to their countrymen. An acquaintance was, in a little time, formed with this ſavage horde; I myſelf in my turn went up to them, and we were ſoon both ſatisfied with one another. Their women every evening brought us a large quantity of milk; for theſe people were very rich in cattle. They made me a preſent of a few ſheep, to which they added a noble pair of oxen for my carriages; and as I was not willing to remain in their debt, I gave them ſome earthen ware, a ſmall quantity of tobacco, and a few knives. All my people inſinuated themſelves inſenſibly into the kraal; each then had his doxy, and the female ſquadron came and eſtabliſhed themſelves among us during the whole time of our abode.

I learned that at the mouth of this river I might meet with ſome hippopotami, or river horſes, none of which I had ever ſeen. As I was only five or ſix miles diſtant from the ſea, and on that account had it in my power, perhaps, to be acquainted for the firſt time with this ſpecies of quadrupede, I ſet out with the utmoſt ſpeed. The river however was ſo broad, and

its banks were ſo encumbered with large trees, that my labour and reſearches were in vain. I ſpent whole days in walking along its ſhores; and in the night time I placed myſelf on the watch, in hopes of ſeeing ſome of them come forth from the water to feed; but I never had even that ſatisfaction.

To make me amends, elephants and buffaloes, eſpecially the latter, were ſo common, and eaſy to be killed, that we had more proviſions than we could uſe. I ſupplied the former huſbands of our women with great abundance: being better armed than they, I hunted only for them; ſo that I obliged them in every manner poſſible. Thus, amidſt the deſarts of Africa, I introduced the cuſtoms and polite manners of the moſt civilized nations of Europe. I muſt here remark, that if ſome hiſtorians have ſaid that the Hottentots are of a jealous diſpoſition, thoſe whom we met with were not ſuſceptible of that cruel paſſion. Had I afterwards found any hordes ſubject to it, I ſhould have mentioned this circumſtance with the ſame veracity.

My engaging behaviour had ſecured me the friendſhip and confidence of theſe honeſt ſavages; and they entertained ſo high an opinion of me, that they never undertook any thing without

without conſulting me. One day having come to complain that the hyænas of the country ravaged and deſtroyed their flocks, I was the more inclined to believe what they ſaid, as one of my oxen had juſt been devoured by the ſame animals. Charmed at having an opportunity of hunting theſe ferocious beaſts along with them, I appointed next day for our excurſion; and early in the morning they arrived at my camp, to the number of about an hundred men, all well armed with bows and arrows. To theſe I added all my hunters; and, putting myſelf at their head, we beat the whole country round with our dogs. With ſuch a number of people I hoped to make a general ſlaughter among theſe deſtructive animals; but three ſhots which we fired, and which killed three of them, had apparently diſperſed all the reſt. After this we ſaw none of them; for the noiſe had ſo frightened them, that, from that moment till the time of our departure, we heard no more of the hyænas than if they had never exiſted.

Some days after we had an alarm which might have become ſerious. In the middle of the night we were all at the ſame time awakened by a frightful noiſe, proceeding from

a troop of elephants, which in paſſing us almoſt bruſhed againſt our camp: in number they might be about an hundred. On this occaſion I was under ſuch dreadful apprehenſions, which my people ſhared along with me, that we did not think proper to inſult this formidable battalion, nor to diſpute their paſſage. Had I attempted it, my camp, my animals, my carriages, and all my people, would in a moment have been cruſhed to atoms. They however did not ſtop, and my camp remained perfectly ſafe.

At the break of day we received a viſit from our neighbours, who had been expoſed to the ſame terrors. They came expreſsly to inform me that, if I ſhould ever again meet with the ſame ſpecies, I ought to be very cautious not to fire at them; as the elephants we had ſeen were extremely dangerous, and much more miſchievious than the reſt. They aſſured me that their fleſh was good for nothing; that it occaſioned ulcers to thoſe who eat it; and, in a word, that they were red elephants.—Red elephants! This word alone inſpired me with a ſtrong deſire to ſee them, and ſeemed to promiſe the acquirement of freſh knowledge; for I had never read or heard that there were red elephants.

When

When theſe animals retired into the woods, they had reached a deep hollow, ſurrounded by enormous buſhes, where it would not have been prudent to approach too near them. I therefore ordered ſome Hottentots to file off behind, and to form a ring; bidding them ſet fire, at certain diſtances, to the dry graſs; and to diſcharge ſome ſhots, to make them paſs by the bottom of a large rock, upon which I had poſted myſelf with my beſt markſmen, and where we could be expoſed to no kind of danger.

My rangers ſeconded my efforts in a wonderful manner; for as ſoon as the fires and the noiſe of the reports had ſpread the alarm, the whole troop, frightened, preſented themſelves before me. A dozen of ſhots, which they did not expect, made them retreat with precipitation, and in the greateſt diſorder. I ſhould in vain attempt to deſcribe the numberleſs ſigns which they exhibited of their fury: on one ſide they ſaw themſelves purſued by the flames of the buſhes, which gained on them behind; and on the other by my ſhots, which I directed to the only paſſage that remained for them to eſcape death. They agitated their bodies as much as the enormity and

heavineſs of them would permit; while their deafening cries, and the craſhing of the trees which they broke in retreating or flying, formed ſuch a dreadful tumult, that the ſight of it frightened me, though I was ſheltered by my rock, and could not be diſturbed in any manner. We wounded one, which for a moment ſeparated from the troop; but it ſoon joined them; and being confounded with the reſt, it would have been very difficult to take aim at it again. From the nature of its bellowing, I imagined it was mortally wounded, and that it could not long ſurvive; but we did not think proper to go immediately in ſearch of it, being firmly perſuaded that it could not eſcape us.

In this new kind of hunting I had no other view than to procure one of theſe animals; which were ſaid to be of a different ſpecies from all thoſe I had before ſeen. Satisfied with having wounded one, and conſidering it as certainly dead, I reſolved not to go in ſearch of it till the next morning: I conſequently recalled all my people, and we returned to our camp. I had indeed been ſtruck with the reddiſh colour of theſe animals; and I found this phenomenon extraordinary: but having

remarked

remarked that the ground upon which we then were had almoſt the ſame tint; and reflecting that the elephant is fond of wallowing in moiſt and marſhy places, and even ſpends a part of its time in this manner, I doubted whether this colour could be owing to any other cauſe, and whether it was not purely factitious.

Next morning, however, I was better convinced, when, on returning to the wood with my people, I found the elephant dead. Every body was perſuaded that our neighbours were deceived; and though they had mentioned that it was dangerous to eat of this ſpecies, they cut off the trunk for me, and reſerved for themſelves the other parts of the animal. I afterwards met ſeveral planters, who believed alſo that there were red elephants; and whatever pains I took to free them from their error, I could not convince them; ſo much were they prejudiced in favour of their own opinion.

The one I killed, which was a female, was nine feet three inches in height: one of its tuſks weighed thirteen pounds, and the other ten. The elephant, whether male or female, has always the left tuſk ſhorter and ſlenderer than the right; it is alſo more ſmooth and ſhining. To account for this difference it

muſt be obſerved, as I have already ſaid, that it is always from left to right that the animal conveys its food with its trunk to its mouth. The brambles or branches on which it feeds occaſion a continual friction againſt that tuſk, whilſt the right is ſcarcely ever touched: beſides, it is with the ſame tuſk that it is accuſtomed to ſound the earth; and by the ſize of the holes which it makes one may judge of its bulk.

When I deſcribe the elephant, I ſhall ſpeak of its manners, paſſions and taſtes; and on this ſubject I ſhall advance nothing but what I have ſeen.

I began to take great pleaſure in this kind of hunting, which I found much leſs dangerous than amuſing. I could not then conceive, nor have I been ſince able to comprehend, why authors and travellers have filled with ſo many falſehoods the relations which they have written of the ſtrength and ſagacity of theſe animals; and given ſcope to their imaginations reſpecting the dangers to which thoſe who purſue them are expoſed. It muſt indeed be allowed that, if any one is ſo thoughtleſs and fool-hardy as to attack an elephant on plain open ground, he is certain of being deſtroyed if he miſſes his aim; but if the hunter knows

how to take his advantages, all the ſtrength of the animal muſt yield to his coolneſs and addreſs. I confeſs that the appearance of an elephant cauſes an aſtoniſhment which at firſt renders one almoſt ſtupid; it is awful and terrible; but, with a little courage and compoſure, one ſoon becomes accuſtomed to its aſpect. Before he attempts this grand kind of hunting, a prudent man ſhould endeavour to examine the character, the gait, and the reſources of the animal; and he ought, above all, according to circumſtances, to ſecure ſome places of retreat, to ſhelter him from danger, in caſe he ſhould be purſued after having miſſed. By means of theſe precautions, this ſpecies of hunting is only an amuſing exerciſe; a game in which there is fifty to one to be laid in favour of the player.

Whilſt I remained in this canton I varied my encampments as well as my occupations; but I always was much attached to the delightful banks of the Gamtoos. I here made an ample harveſt of rarities, and my collection increaſed very ſenſibly.

On the 11th of September, at ſix in the morning, we decamped. I had informed the neigh-

neighbouriug horde of my intention, and it was with the utmoſt regret that they ſaw us depart. As for me, I could not leave them without being ſenſibly affected. Theſe good people had inſpired me with a very ſtrong attachment. "Can ſo much mildneſs and ſimplicity," ſaid I, "excite ſo great contempt? "Are theſe then the ſavages of Africa, who "thirſt after the blood of Europeans, and who "cannot be approached without horror?" This goodneſs and affability gave me the greater confidence, as I was then really in the midſt of a deſart, and as nothing ſeemed to threaten me with danger in future. All this country, which is inhabited only by hordes of the Gonaquas, differs eſſentially from that belonging to the Hottentots of the colony. Theſe people have no direct intercourſe one with another: the former are called *ſavage Hottentots*. Before I proceed any farther I ſhall make a few obſervations, without which one could only form very imperfect ideas reſpecting them.

They no longer compoſe, as formerly, one nation, uniform in their manners, cuſtoms, and purſuits. The eſtabliſhment of the Dutch

colony

colony was a fatal epoch, which diſunited them all, and occaſioned thoſe differences by which they are at preſent diſtinguiſhed.

In 1652, when Riebeck the ſurgeon, on his return from India, opened the eyes of the Directors of the Company reſpecting the importance of an eſtabliſhment at the Cape, they wiſely thought that ſuch an enterpriſe could not be better executed than by the genius which had planned it. Furniſhed therefore with ample powers, and being provided with proviſions, and every thing that could contribute to the ſucceſs of his project, Riebeck ſoon arrived at Table Bay. Like an able politician, and a ſkilful negociator, he employed every method in his power to ſecure the friendſhip of the Hottentots; and he covered with honey the edge of the poiſoned bowl. Gained over by powerful allurements, theſe ſavages, the unlimited maſters of all this part of Africa, did not perceive how many of their rights, and how much authority, repoſe, and happineſs, this guilty profanation deprived them of. Indolent by nature, true citizens of the world, and little addicted to agriculture, they were not uneaſy that ſtrangers ſhould ſeize on a ſmall corner of uſeleſs land, which

was

was often uninhabited. They thought that whether a little farther, or a little nearer, it was of no importance where their flocks, the only riches worthy of engaging their attention, ſought for their food, provided they could find it. The avaricious policy of the Dutch had a view of great hopes from ſo peaceful a beginning; and as it is readier, and knows better than any other to embrace the advantages offered it by fortune, it did not fail to finiſh the work, by holding out two very ſeducing allurements to the Hottentots—tobacco and ſtrong liquors. From that moment theſe unhappy ſavages bid adieu to their liberty, and to that pride which is inſpired by a ſenſe of thoſe rights which mankind inherit from nature. Attracted by theſe two baits, they approached as near as they could to the ſource from which they received them; whilſt the Dutch, who for a pipe of tobacco, or a glaſs of brandy, could procure an ox, paid every attention in their power to ſo valuable neighbours. The colony inſenſibly increaſing, and acquiring more ſtrength, that formidable power which dictated laws to all this part of Africa, and removed to a great diſtance every thing that attempted to oppoſe

its

its eager ambition, was ſeen to riſe on foundations that could no longer be ſhaken. The fame of its proſperity was ſoon ſpread, and drew thither every day a number of new ſettlers. It may be eaſily judged that, according to the uſual practice, founded upon a logic which deſtroys the laws of property, ſo ſacred and ſo reſpectable, the will of the ſtronger party was a ſufficient title for it to extend its poſſeſſions. The Dutch ſeized indiſcriminately at ſeveral times, and even without having occaſion for them, on all the lands which government, or individuals favoured by government, thought proper or found convenient.

The Hottentots, thus confined, preſſed, and haraſſed on all ſides, divided themſelves, and purſued plans entirely oppoſite. Thoſe who were ſtill intereſted in the preſervation of their flocks, penetrated among the mountains towards the north and north-eaſt; but theſe were the fewer number. The reſt, ruined by a few glaſſes of brandy, and a few rolls of tobacco, impoveriſhed and ſtripped of every thing, did not think of quitting their country; but abſolutely renouncing their manners, as well as their ancient and happy condition, of which they

they have no remembrance at preſent, they baſely ſold their ſervices to the whites, who of ſubmiſſive ſtrangers having ſuddenly become haughty maſters and enterpriſing planters, have not ſufficient hands to turn to advantage their immenſe riches; and who eaſe themſelves of the painful and multiplied labours requiſite on their plantations, by laying them upon theſe unfortunate Hottentots, more and more degenerated and corrupted.

A few paltry and miſerable hordes have indeed eſtabliſhed themſelves, and live as they can, in different cantons of the colony; but they have not even the power of chooſing their own chief. As they are in the diſtrict of government, and under its authority, the right of naming him belongs entirely to the governor. The perſon whom he chooſes repairs to the town, and receives a large cane, much like that of our couriers; but with this difference, that the knob of it is only of pure copper: after which a creſcent or gorget, formed of the ſame metal, upon which is engraven in large letters the word *capitein*, is put round his neck as a badge of his dignity. From that moment his melancholy horde, which for a long time has loſt its national

name, aſſumes that of the new chief who has been ſet over it. They will then ſay, for example, the horde of captain Kees, who becomes to the governor a new creature, a new ſpy, and a new ſlave, and to his own countrymen a new tyrant.

The governor himſelf is never perſonally acquainted with thoſe whom he appoints. It is generally the planter neareſt the horde who ſolicits and determines the nomination for one of his own creatures; becauſe he truſts that a low perſon whom he has in this manner patronized will not be ungrateful, and that he will have all his vaſſals ready at his ſervice when neceſſity may require. Thus without any preliminary information, and even without any regard to juſtice, a helpleſs and feeble horde are obliged to receive laws from a man often incapable of commanding them; and thus does the intereſt of one individual prevail over the general good both in great and little affairs: and it is thus that the revolutions of a republic, and the puerile election of the ſyndic of a village, proceeding from the ſame principle, are equally ſimilar in their effects.

Such in general are the Hottentots known under the name of the Hottentots of the Cape,

or

or Hottentots of the colonies: but we muſt not confound with them the ſavage Hottentots, who by way of deriſion are called the *Jackal-Hottentots*; and who, far removed from the arbitrary Dutch government, ſtill preſerve in the deſart which they inhabit all the purity of their primitive manners.

I was now arrived at that point in my journey, where having no more intercourſe with the former, whom I had left behind me, I found myſelf in the middle of the latter; but it is not neceſſary that I ſhould here enter particularly into all the different marks by which they are diſtinguiſhed. To convey ſome idea of the character of the ſavage Hottentots, and of what I had to expect from them, it will be ſufficient to offer one remark, which is a truth confirmed by experience. In all countries wherever the ſavages are abſolutely ſeparated from civilized nations, and live ſequeſtered, their manners are mild; but they change and become corrupted the nearer they approach them. When the Hottentots live amongſt them, it is very rare that they do not become monſters. This aſſertion, however mortifying it may be, is nevertheleſs a true principle, which is ſcarcely liable to one exception. When to the northward of the

Cape

Cape I found myſelf under the tropic, among remote nations; when I ſaw whole hordes ſurround me with ſigns of ſurpriſe, and of the moſt childiſh curioſity, and, approaching me with confidence, ſtroke my beard, my hair, and my face with their hands—"I have nothing "to fear from theſe people," ſaid I to myſelf; "this is the firſt time they ever ſaw a white "man."

I have entered into this digreſſion with the greater readineſs, as it is of ſome importance to fix the reader's attention to this part, which is the moſt intereſting of all my excurſions and travels. I eagerly return to it; and I always experience a new pleaſure in relating theſe ſimple but delightful adventures.

The whole horde, who could with difficulty ſeparate from me, accompanied me as far as the river *Louri*, four leagues from the Gamtoos; where we ſtopped to take leave of our good friends, and to regale them with ſome glaſſes of brandy, and a few pipes of tobacco. The women, who during my reſidence in the neighbourhood of their kraals had attached themſelves to my Hottentots, and who perhaps regretted a little the loſs of my kitchin, abſolutely inſiſted upon following us. But I had

often remarked, though I pretended not to obſeve it, that my people had ſeveral times quarrelled; and the conſequence was, that they had relaxed in their ſervice: on this account I obſtinately perſiſted in refuſing to ſuffer theſe women to accompany us, or to remain with me. One only appeared to me to be very active: I found that ſhe took great care of my cows and my goats, and that ſhe waſhed my linen well. Theſe reaſons concerned my own perſon; but another motive pleaded very powerfully in her favour. My faithful Klaas had conceived a violent affection for her: to ſeparate them would have been to tear two hearts at once, to be ſevere without any advantage, and to be cruel towards one who would have ſacrificed his life for me on every occaſion. By a policy, therefore, contrary to that which any other would have adopted, I reſolved to retain her. This mark of preference ſhewed how far I diſtinguiſhed Klaas from his companions: whether it proceeded from injuſtice or weakneſs, I could not reſiſt the deſire of making at leaſt one happy, ſince all could not be ſo; and I afterwards had no cauſe to repent of my conduct. To this woman I gave the name of *Ragel*. Thoſe ſervices

which ſhe had always performed were aſſigned to her; and ſhe attended me every where till the end of my journey.

After the departure of the horde, we continued our route; but a violent ſtorm obliged us to ſtop at *Galgebos*. It was five in the afternoon when we halted: the place was far from being deſtitute of beauties, and I would gladly have remained here ſome time; but we could not find a ſingle rivulet. We therefore croſſed the river *Van-Staade*, at the diſtance of two leagues; and unyoked at ſeven on the borders of a lake, where we could procure water ſufficient for our whole caravan.

To how many uſeful proceſſes and inventions does not chance ſometimes give birth! It often ſerves us better, and by means much more ſimple, than any of thoſe ſuggeſted by our own lights, our combinations, or our knowledge. Of this truth I received a convincing proof even in the place in which I had ſtopped.

The horde from whom I ſeparated had come in the morning to bring to my camp a large ſupply of milk; with which I filled a pitcher almoſt to the brim, and placed it in

my waggon, intending to uſe it on my journey for quenching my thirſt. The ſtorm by which we were overtaken had ſo cooled me, that I did not touch it during the day: but in the evening, after our fires were kindled, being deſirous of diſtributing it among my people, I found that it was become ſour. I therefore ordered it to be put into a veſſel to regale my dogs; but I was much aſtoniſhed to find it converted into moſt excellent and beautiful butter, for which I was indebted to the jolting of my waggon. This diſcovery, which I afterwards put in practice during the reſt of my journey, procured me, beſides freſh butter, a moſt ſalutary ſupply of buttermilk, which I frequently made uſe of, and which doubtleſs contributed to preſerve me vigorous and in good health.

The day following we were prevented from again ſetting out by a ſecond ſtorm, which was really dreadful. The hail that fell was as large as pullets eggs; and my cattle ſuffered ſo much, that I was under great uneaſineſs for them. One of my ſhe goats was ſo ſeverely wounded, that I was obliged to kill her: this indeed was a real loſs. I regretted her much,

much, for ſhe was about to bring forth young.

The weather at length changing, we quitted our lake; and about noon, after croſſing two rivers, the great and the little *Swaar-Kops*, I ordered my oxen to be unyoked on the banks of the latter. Having obſerved the prints of ſome animal's feet with which I was not acquainted, my people, to whom I ſhewed them, aſſured me that they were not thoſe of the rhinoceros. Whilſt my camp was arranging, I followed theſe traces; but night coming on made me loſe them, and I returned without having ſeen any thing. On this river, which was pretty conſiderable, we found another horde of ſavages. The kraal was compoſed of nine or ten huts, inhabited only by fifty or ſixty perſons at moſt. Theſe people adviſed me not to croſs the river Boſſiman, which paſſes near this place: they ſaid it would be much better to turn off to the left, and to puſh farther into the interior part of the country, to avoid a numerous troop of Caffres, who often alarmed that canton, and carried fire and ſword along with them; that nothing was ſeen every where around but diſorder and pillage, fields ravaged, and habi-

tions laid waſte and reduced to aſhes; that the proprietors, to avoid ſudden and certain death, had abandoned their poſſeſſions, dragging behind them a few feeble remains of their flocks; and that, in a word, I ought not to approach the country of Caffraria. So alarming a caution, I muſt own, at firſt ſtartled me a little: I immediately aſſembled my people, and we deliberated what plan it would be moſt prudent to purſue. I was very deſirous of ſounding the diſpoſition of every one. Their unanimous opinion, which coincided very well with my private intention, was, that we ſhould firſt avoid, but not in ſuch a manner as to retard us too much, this dangerous troop of Caffres; that, as we were very near them, we ought always to be on our guard both night and day; that, to prevent being ſurpriſed, we ſhould never encamp but in the open country; that our oxen, when out at paſture, ſhould be protected by four men, armed with fuſees; that my horſes ſhould never quit the ſtakes to which they were tied, that in caſe of an alarm they might be always at hand; and that my large fuſee, well loaded, ſhould remain at the camp; and that three ſhots, fired at equal intervals, ſhould be a ſignal

nal for thoſe, who on account of their different occupations might be obliged to go too great a diſtance from the common centre to rejoin the main body.

When we had taken theſe precautions, and given proper inſtructions for their being obſerved, I mounted my horſe; and, followed by two of my people well armed, made a ſtrict ſearch every where around, to diſcover whether any of the Caffres were ranging in the neigbourhood, ready to fire upon the firſt that I might ſee concealed with a view to ſurpriſe us, in caſe I ſhould find it impoſſible to take him priſoner. Not one however appeared. Having advanced a little farther after dinner, I perceived that the river, as far as its mouth, was bordered with prickly trees; that the ground near it was ſandy, and covered with underwood; and that its environs abounded with game, ſome of which I killed for proviſion. As we ſaw no appearance that could give us any uneaſineſs, I was convinced we had then nothing to fear from theſe Caffres, ſaid to be ſo terrible. I ordered my camp to be moved next morning, and we quitted the *Swaar-Kops*. The horde of Hottentots, terrified merely by the name of theſe cruel aveng-

ers, propoſed that we ſhould eſtabliſh ourſelves at a conſiderable diſtance thence, that we might not be in the neighbourhood of Caffraria; and, when they ſaw me depart, they aſked permiſſion to follow me, and to put themſelves under the protection of my camp. This requeſt I readily complied with; and though at bottom I was overjoyed at their propoſal, I artfully made a merit of it, as much with a deſign to keep them dependant upon me, as to give ſpirits to my people by this formidable body, and to ſupport their courage. Nothing more fortunate could have occurred; I reinforced my troop; and, beſides the particular reſources of this horde, I had the advantage of my artillery, which could oppoſe whole clouds of aſſagays*, and baffle all the efforts of an army of ſavages, ſhould I be well ſeconded. In leſs than two hours all the huts were taken down and packed up, and with other effects put on the backs of our ſpare oxen.

I firſt made the half of the men belonging to this horde ſet out before me, with all their cattle, giving them two of my people well armed to eſcort them. They carried with

* A kind of lance which the Caffres uſe with much dexterity.

them

them alſo one of my horſes; that, in caſe of any accident, they might be able to give me earlier intelligence of it.

An hour after I ordered my relays, cows, ſheep, goats, and all the women of the horde, with their children mounted upon their oxen, to follow them, and a party of their men to march behind. This company was eſcorted alſo by ſix of my chaſſeurs. My three carriages, with the reſt of my people, cloſed the rear. I myſelf, mounted on my beſt horſe, in order that I might have my eye every where, rode backwards and forwards on the wings, and from right to left, continually afraid of being ſuddenly ſurpriſed; for I can ſafely aſſert that, had the leader been once diſmounted, the reſt of the caravan would have been expoſed to the moſt horrid butchery, and muſt have become the prey of the moment.

I was completely armed. In the ſide pockets of my breeches I carried a pair of double-barrelled piſtols; I had another pair of the ſame kind at my girdle; my double-barrelled fuſee was ſlung at the the bow of my ſaddle; and a large ſabre hung by my ſide, and a poniard or dagger from the button-hole of my veſt: I could therefore fire ten times almoſt in a

moment. This arſenal incommoded me conſiderably at firſt; but I never quitted it, both on account of my own ſafety, and becauſe by this precaution I ſeemed to increaſe the confidence of my people. My arms, doubtleſs, appeared to them to correſpond with my reſolutions; and, full of this idea, each purſued his way with the utmoſt compoſure, leaving to me the care of defending them.

This caravan on its march exhibited a ſingular and amuſing ſpectacle—I may even ſay grand. The turns which it was obliged to make in following the windings of the buſhes and rocks, continually gave it new forms; and theſe points of view varied every inſtant. Sometimes it entirely diſappeared from my ſight; and all of a ſudden, from the ſummit of a ſmall eminence, I would again diſcover at a diſtance my van-guard ſlowly advancing towards a mountain; while the main body, who without confuſion, and in fine order, were following the traces of thoſe who had preceded them, was almoſt below me. The women ſuckled their children, and gave them food and drink ſeated on their oxen by them; ſome wept, others ſung or laughed; and the men, ſmoking a ſocial pipe, converſed together,

having

having no longer the appearance of people terrified at the approach of an enemy.

Entertaining a little more uneaſineſs than theſe walking machines, I was fully ſenſible of my critical ſituation; and on the back of my beaſt indulged in philoſophical reveries. At the diſtance of three thouſand leagues from Paris, the only perſon of my ſpecies among ſo many natives, ſurrounded and watched by the moſt ferocious animals, I could not help being filled with admiration, to ſee myſelf conducting, for the firſt time, in the deſarts of Africa, a ſavage horde, who, ſubmitting voluntarily to my orders, executed them blindly, and committed entirely to me the care of their preſervation. Taken collectively, I had nothing to fear from them; nevertheleſs I ſaw ſome among them who would have made me tremble, if, in ſingle combat, ſtrength alone had been to decide the conteſt: but at bottom I was fully convinced, that here, as well as elſewhere, it was not the ſtrongeſt but the moſt ſkilful that commanded.

We had not advanced very far, when my dogs, which were ranging through the buſhes on every ſide, began to ſtop and to bark. My companions were inſtantly filled with terror; imagining

imagining that we had fallen in with ſome Caffres, placed in ambuſh to intercept us; but I paid very little attention to their abſurd reaſoning. I thought it was impoſſible that my advanced guard could have paſſed, without being attacked; and I perceived that they were peaceably purſuing their journey, without the leaſt appearance of diſorder. I therefore put ſpurs to my horſe; and advancing through the buſhes, was much aſtoniſhed to find only a porcupine, ſurrounded by my dogs, from which it was endeavouring to defend itſelf. I immediately killed it; and fearing leſt the report of my muſket might lead my people into an error and induce them to take ſome raſh ſtep, I returned towards them, and by ridiculing their timidity convinced them that I was not daunted by trifles.

The porcupine defends itſelf in a wonderful manner. Its quills ſhelter it from every attempt; and, when a dog approaches, it artfully eludes him, makes its attack on his flank, and, when he is once wounded he never again returns to the charge. Some of the quills always remain ſticking in his fleſh, which damp his courage, and cauſe him to betake himſelf to flight. One of my Hottentots, who had

been

been wounded in the leg by one of them, was ill for more than ſix months.

Mr. Mallard, an officer belonging to the regiment of Pondicherry, at the Cape of Good Hope, being pricked in hunting one of theſe animals, had nearly loſt his leg by the wound; and, notwithſtanding all the care that was taken of him, he ſuffered dreadful tortures for more than four months, during the firſt of which he was confined to his bed.

The porcupine, however, is excellent eating and its fleſh is often ſerved up on the genteeleſt tables at the Cape, after it has been carefully ſmoked.

After travelling an hour and a half, I ordered my caravan to halt; but we ſtopped no longer than was neceſſary to collect a ſufficient proviſion of ſalt on the borders of a brackiſh lake which we found in our way; and, two leagues farther, I advanced before the reſt, to viſit a plantation which I perceived on our left. I found that it had been plundered and burnt by the Caffres; for nothing remained of it but ſome pieces of the walls black with ſmoke, and calcined by the flames: a very diſmal appearance in the boſom of a deſart!

An

An hour after, my advanced guard was ſtopped by the Kouga, on the banks of which we erected our tents.

The Kouga, properly ſpeaking, is only a rivulet, but we found ſcarcely any water in it; there was only a ſmall quantity in ſome hollow places, in which we caught abundance of excellent tortoiſes, though of a very ſmall ſize; the largeſt did not weigh above three pounds. Before the commencement of night I ordered an abbatis to be conſtructed of the branches of trees, to form a defence round my cattle: and, whilſt this was executing the women were employed in collecting whatever dry wood they could find in the neighbourhood, to ſupply us with fuel; as it was indiſpenſably neceſſary to kindle fires in different places, leſt we ſhould be ſurpriſed by the Caffres, or by lions, which were now very common in theſe cantons. We remained here till the 20th, when we began to be in want of proviſions; but I was ſo fortunate as to kill three buffaloes and two bubales. On the banks of the rivulet I found ſome Guinea-hens, exactly like thoſe of Europe. When boiled a long time, they were excellent; but when roaſted or broiled, they were good for nothing. They were apparently

parently too old. I found alſo ſome new ſpecies of very pretty birds; and, among others, a barbet, of which I ſhall give ſome coloured figures.

After this we went up the banks of the Kouga, ſtill in the ſame order as we had hitherto obſerved; but we had ſcarcely travelled an hour, when my advanced guard ſtopping, ſent to inform me that they had diſcovered the prints of men's feet. Struck with terror, they imagined them to be the traces of the Caffres, and they now ſaw nothing around them but theſe ſavages. Having haſtened to the ſpot, I obſerved that the traces ſeemed very freſh; and as this diſcovery began now to become very ſerious, I was ſenſible that we ought to put ourſelves in the beſt ſtate of defence, without loſs of time. I therefore ordered the whole caravan to halt; and, whilſt my people were buſily employed in forming a fence round the oxen, and in arranging my camp, followed by my two intrepid chaſſeurs, I ſet out to reconnoitre. After following the traces for an hour, they conducted us to a place where we found the remains of a fire not quite extinguiſhed, and a few mutton bones, which had been lately gnawed.

gnawed. From the fire it appeared evident that the ſavages who had ſtopped here, had alſo paſſed the night on the ſame ſpot; but, on ſeeing the gnawed bones, I could ſcarcely allow myſelf to believe that they had been Caffres, becauſe theſe people never breed ſheep. It was, however, poſſible that they might have procured them by plunder, or have found them among their enemies. During the uncertainty into which theſe reflections had thrown me, I reſolved to advance ſtill farther; until being at length tired of traverſing and ranging the country, finding that theſe traces led us too far from our route, and conducted us to one directly oppoſite to that which we ought to purſue, I returned to my camp. The night following we met with little diſturbance; but the next day a moſt dreadful ſtorm of rain obliged us to remain cloſely ſhut up in our tents; and the day after we were under the diſagreeable neceſſity of croſſing fourteen times ſucceſſively the unlucky Kouga, which every quarter of an hour ſtopped our journey, and above all things ſhook my carriages dreadfully upon the ſtones and fragments of rock which it carried along with it in its courſe. This fatiguing interruption, ſo often repeated, compelled us to

paſs

paſs the night near a ſmall torrent called *Drooge Rivier*, the Dry Rivier: for our cattle were ſo haraſſed that they were not in a condition to carry us any farther; and the circumſtances of the moment did not permit us to make long marches. Whenever we halted, a great deal of time was neceſſary to arrange our camp; to prepare food for about an hundred animals; to boil proviſions for a ſtill greater number of people; to watch over the ſafety of all theſe individuals; to collect wood for making fires, and to keep them burning during the whole night. Theſe details became very laborious; but they were nevertheleſs indiſpenſable.

That evening our dogs thought proper to be our purveyors. The whole country was filled with Guinea-fowls which at ſun-ſet perched in hundreds on the trees that ſurrounded us, in order to paſs the night. They made a continual and diſagreeable cackling: but it was of ſome uſe to us, for theſe ſimple birds diſcovered themſelves by it; and our dogs, which heard them, began to run round and to bark at the bottoms of the trees where they were ſeated. Theſe Guinea-fowls endeavoured to make their eſcape; but the weight of their,

bodies, and the ſhortneſs of their wings, not permitting them to fly above the trees, and being obliged on this account to run and to leap on the ground, our dogs watched for them in their paſſage; and, ſeizing them with their teeth, ſoon deſtroyed them. This method of hunting procured us abundance of theſe animals, without waſting a ſingle grain of powder. Next morning I wiſhed to purſue the ſame plan; but theſe birds, better inſtructed by the fate of the preceding evening, did not deſcend. One diſcharge, however, of my fuſee, produced all the effect I expected.

During the night, we heard the diſtant roaring of ſome lions.

On the 23d, after a march of ſome hours, we arrived at the large and beautiful river of *Sondag*. Its channel was very full; the weather ſeemed to threaten rain; and the dread of being again ſtopped by an inundation, made us reſolve to croſs it on rafts. Having ordered a quantity of wood neceſſary for this purpoſe to be cut down, and what might be requiſite for incloſing our cattle in the uſual manner, when we ſhould encamp, I embarked my carriages piece by piece, with the greater part of my effects, and the half of my people, who erected

our tents on the other ſide, under the direction of Swanepoel. The cattle paſſed by ſwimming, as they had before done on the like occaſions; and the following day I alſo croſſed the torrent with the remainder of my company and effects. The preparation, execution, and arrangement of all theſe matters, employed us till the latter part of the month.

In the interval I procured ſeveral birds, and I cauſed ſeveral koedoes to be ſalted. But I was in great danger of loſing my dear Kees. The account of this accident will convey a better idea of my ſimple and uniform manner of paſſing my time than any thing elſe I could ſay on the ſubject.

Every thing was got ready for dinner; and I was dreſſing upon a plate ſome dry haricots which I had juſt fried, when I heard the voice of a bird with which I was not at all acquainted. Forgetting in a moment both my cookery and my dinner, I ſnatched up my fuſee, and hurried from my tent. At the end of half an hour, I returned perfectly ſatisfied with my expedition, and holding my bird in my hand; but I was much ſurpriſed, on entering my tent, not to find a ſingle bean on my table. This was a trick of Kees. I had corrected him

pretty ſeverely, the evening before, for robbing me of my ſupper; and I did not imagine that he would have ſo ſoon forgot his puniſhment, as to be guilty of this new fault almoſt immediately after it. He had however diſappeared; but as he always waited for the return of night, when he had committed any error, before he again made his appearance, I well knew that he could not eſcape me. It was generally at the time when I was drinking tea that he glided in, without noiſe, and took his ſtation near me, in his accuſtomed place, with an air of innocence, as if nothing had happened. That evening he did not appear; and next morning, as no one had ſeen him, I began to be very uneaſy, and to be apprehenſive that he had deſerted me entirely. This loſs would have been the more diſtreſſing, as, beſides the amuſement he afforded me, he was really of great utility, and rendered me ſuch ſervices that his place could not have been ſupplied by another. On the third day, however, one of my people, who had been in ſearch of water, aſſured me that he had ſeen him in the neighbourhood; but that he had hid himſelf as ſoon as he found that he was diſcovered. Setting out immediately in queſt of him,

him, I ſearched all the neighbourhood with my dogs. All of a ſudden hearing a cry like that which he uſued to ſend forth when I returned from hunting, and when I would not carry him along with me, I ſtopped; and caſting my eyes every where around, I at length perceived him, half concealed, behind a large branch in the middle of a tree. I called him in a familiar manner, and coaxed him as much as I could to deſcend and come to me; but as he ſeemed not inclined to truſt to theſe marks of my friendſhip, and of the joy which I conceived on meeting with him, I was under the neceſſity of climbing the tree. When I had reached the ſpot where he was, he ſuffered me to lay hold of him; while fear and pleaſure were alternately painted in his eyes, and expreſſed by his geſtures. Soon after I returned to my camp, where he ſeemed to wait for his fate; and where I came to a determination reſpecting him. I thought at firſt that I ought to tie him up; but by this I ſhould have been deprived of his amuſing tricks. I reſolved therefore to ſhew my generoſity towards him, and not to treat him with ſeverity. A ſecond correction would not have altered his diſpoſition: and I reflected that he had perhaps more than once

received it very improperly; for his reputation, which gave a colour of probability to every accuſation made againſt him, hurt him very much in my opinion, and rendered me unjuſt, eſpecially when I was in bad humour. Several petty thefts, which a fondneſs for dainties cauſed my Hottentots to commit, were often laid upon him; and on this account poor Kees was many times blamed without cauſe.

The river Sondag has its ſource in high mountains, which are almoſt always covered with ſnow; on which account they are named *Snow-Bergen*, or the mountains of ſnow. I ſaw them on my left towards the north. This river, enlarged by various ſmall ſtreams which run into it, diſcharges itſelf into the ſea at the diſtance of ten leagues from the place where I then was.

On the 1ſt of October we purſued our route in the uſual order. After travelling ſeven hours, we repoſed ourſelves for a moment under the ruins of a habitation deſerted like the former, and no leſs diſmal and melancholy. At four in the afternoon we halted at a lake; and it was very fortunate for us that we had two large fires that night, as two lions and ſome hyænas paid us a viſit, which threw

our

our cattle into great diſorder. We were obliged to paſs the whole night on our legs. Theſe animals appeared ſo ferocious, that we could not drive them away but by repeated diſcharges of our fire arms.

At the break of day we ſaw ſuch numbers of thoſe antelopes called *ſpring-bock*, that I reſolved to employ the whole day in hunting them; eſpecially as our proviſions began to fail, and as it was often neceſſary to have a freſh ſupply. The conſumption made by all my people was ſo great, that a juſt idea can ſcarcely be formed of it; for, by carrying a whole horde and their animals along with me, I had added an additional encumbrance, at which I was ſometimes frightened. We were, however, lucky enough to kill ſeven of theſe antelopes. Though this ſpecies are ſwift-footed, people on horſeback may eaſily come up with them. Being generally collected into flocks, and keeping as cloſely together as ſheep, they mutually impede each other, which greatly retards them in their courſe: one ball, well directed, may kill two or three of them, and ſometimes more.

Next day we made a forced march: we had found bad water the evening before; and to

procure better it was neceſſary that we ſhould fall in with ſome arm of the river Sondag. We reached it luckily at four in the afternoon. My oxen had ſuffered ſo much from the exceſſive heat, that they were unable to proceed farther; and I was afraid that ſome of them would die, though I had taken the precaution of relieving them often.

On the 4th we quitted the river entirely; and proceeded that day only three leagues, as the heat was almoſt inſupportable. My oxen had not then quite recovered from the fatigue of the evening before.

On the 5th we ſet out at three in the morning; and at ſeven we ſaw another deſerted plantation. The proprietors, without doubt, oppreſſed by fear, had not taken time to ſecure their effects from pillage. On the ſight of this abode, which was in a perfect ſtate, and which exhibited no marks of fire, it appeared to me that the inhabitants had been terrified without any cauſe. I had the curioſity to enter the houſe, and I found that I was not deceived in my opinion; for I obſerved no derangement in any of the furniture, each utenſil being in its proper place. I permitted none of my people to touch any thing, of however little

little value it might be; but, as the heat was exceſſive, I took advantage of the ſhade which this building afforded us, in order that we might repoſe ourſelves a little. Towards evening I prepared to ſet out; and we continued our journey for four hours.

The day following we paſſed two more deſerted houſes, which were in the ſame ſtate as thoſe ſeen the evening before; but, as I was unwilling to ſtop, I did not viſit them. After a march of four hours, we arrived at the river *Vogel*, or bird's river, where we halted, as our oxen were in want of water, and had ſcarcely any thing to eat. At noon the heavens became overcaſt, and the ſun was entirely hid by very large clouds; which to me was a lucky circumſtance, as it gave me an opportunity of advancing a little farther. We hoped to reach *Agter-Bruyntjes-Hoogte*; but, when we came to the bottom of theſe mouutains, we met with a pond, which obliged us to encamp, as we very much doubted whether we ſhould ſoon find another.

During the night the ſavage Hottentots obſerved our fires; and, as they approached to reconnoitre us, our dogs, which perceived them, took the alarm, and began to bark and make a

dreadful

dreadful noiſe. On this occaſion part of my people, perſuaded that we were inveſted by Caffres (for I muſt hear repeat that fear made them imagine that they ſaw Caffres every where), propoſed to leave the camp, and to ſhelter themſelves in the buſhes; as if we ſhould have been in greater ſecurity, when ſeparately concealed in a wretched coppice, than when collected in a body, well armed and reſolute. Klaas and I were quite furious. The venerable Swanepoel joined us, with a view of encouraging theſe daſtardly ſouls; and he ſwore that he would ſtand by me whatever might be the event, and that he would ſpend the laſt drop of his blood in my defence. In the midſt of this converſation, and the timid irreſolution of the reſt of my company, I heard a voice begging, in broken Dutch, that I would recal my dogs, which I immediately did. When I was fully aſſured that theſe people were only Hottentots, I ſuffered them to approach; upon which they made their appearance, to the number of fifteen men, with ſeveral women and children.

They had ſet out to remove themſelves from the flames of war; and I was informed by them that when I paſſed the mountain I

ſhould

ſhould ſtill find ſeveral deſerted habitations. They told me alſo that the proprietors of theſe different houſes had collected themſelves into one body, to oppoſe the enemy; but that they had formed a reſolution of abandoning their country and poſſeſſions entirely, with a view of getting nearer to the Dutch ſettlements; and that the Caffres, who were ſtill in the field, had ſworn not to leave one of them remaining.

I paſſed the night in converſation of this nature; and I learned from theſe people every thing that I wiſhed to know: but I was the leſs inclined to conſider the Caffres as ferocious animals thirſting after blood, who ſpared neither ſex, age, nor their neighbours, as I was too well acquainted with the planters to confide in their veracity, or to aſcribe to them a part of thoſe horrid cruelties of which they always affected to complain.

But why ſhould a people ſo mild as the Hottentots, and who lead a life both peaceable and precarious, be concerned in theſe horrid wars, had they not ſufficient cauſe for ſhewing their reſentment and revenge? The Caffres naturally are not a miſchievous people. They live, like the other ſavages of this

part

part of Africa, on the milk with which they are ſupplied by their cattle; and clothe themſelves with the ſkins of animals. Like the reſt, they are indolent by nature, and warlike by neceſſity; but they are not an odious nation, whoſe name is calculated to inſpire terror. As I was very deſirous of being thoroughly informed reſpecting the motives and riſe of theſe atrocious wars, which thus diſturbed the tranquillity of the moſt beautiful parts of Africa, theſe honeſt people, who had truſted to me with ſo much confidence, unboſomed themſelves in the like manner without any reſerve. They informed me, indeed, that the oppreſſion and cruelty of the planters were the only cauſe of the war, and that juſtice was on the ſide of the Caffres: they told me alſo that the Boſhmen, a kind of vagabond deſerters who belong to no nation, and who live only by rapine, took advantage of that moment of diſorder to pillage without diſtinction the Caffres, the Hottentots, and the planters; that nothing but the tyrannical behaviour of theſe wretches could have made the Caffres include in the general proſcription all the Hottentots, whom they conſidered as ſpies attached to the whites, and whom the latter employed to lay

ſnares for them with more dexterity. This laſt circumſtance was not void of foundation; but it could by no means be applied to the more remote hordes. Thus were the innocent involved in the common fate of the guilty. But how was it poſſible for ſavages to make a diſtinction which even civilized nations are not accuſtomed to do? They told me, beſides, that the Caffres had procured ſome fire arms, which they found in thoſe plundered houſes, or had taken by ſurpriſe from the Hottentots belonging to the colonies.

I was, in ſhort, informed in the moſt minute manner of every thing that had paſſed, of the attacks made, and the battles fought, in which, though they had committed horrid ravages, the Caffres had always been beat, which to me did not appear ſurpriſing. Their aſſagay, their moſt deſtructive weapon, which they handle with great dexterity, cannot ſtand in competition with our fire arms, employed by chaſſeurs who ſeldom miſs their aim. What I had learned intereſted me very much, for the ſmalleſt circumſtance could not be indifferent to me. I found myſelf engaged, on my own account, in the events and chances of this war; ſince I was actually, as one may ſay, on the

the field of battle; and was approaching towards that moment, when wounded to the ſoul by the diſtreſſing ſpectacle which I had continually before my eyes, and inflamed with the moſt ardent deſire of ſerving thoſe unfortunate wretches, with whom I was not acquainted—whom I had never ſeen, nor was perhaps ever to ſee; but whoſe diſmal ſituation excited my compaſſion—I was preparing, if all theſe people would have followed me, to traverſe fifty leagues of Caffraria, at the riſque of every thing that might happen; and to re-eſtabliſh peace for ever in that unhappy country. I was not however ſeconded in my views by a ſingle perſon. Heaven itſelf, in my opinion, could not have freed thoſe who followed me from their terror: but I can more juſtly cover with opprobrium thoſe daſtardly Hottentots of the colonies whom I viſited two days after, for the ſhameful manner in which their chief refuſed to aſſiſt me in an expedition which would have undoubtedly ſucceeded, and done the greateſt honour to humanity.

A freſh misfortune, which had a little before taken place in theſe unhappy countries, added conſiderably to my courage, and heated my imagination. I was told that, about ſix weeks prior

prior to that period, an Engliſh veſſel had been ſhipwrecked on the coaſt; that being driven on ſhore, a part of the crew had fallen into the hands of the Caffres, who had put them all to death, except a few women, whom they had cruelly reſerved; and that all thoſe who had eſcaped led a wandering life on the coaſt, or in the foreſts, where they muſt ſoon periſh in miſery. Among theſe unfortunate people, there were ſaid to be ſeveral French officers, priſoners of war, who had been put on board in order to return to Europe.

This diſtreſſing intelligence gave me great uneaſineſs; and, after all the information which theſe people could communicate, I judged that, by proceeding fifty leagues to the eaſtward of the ſpot where I was, I ſhould arrive at the veſſel. I therefore formed a thouſand projects in my mind, and invented a thouſand different ſchemes for aſſiſting theſe unfortunate people, whoſe ſituation was ſo deplorable: but all my Hottentots revolted againſt my propoſal; and neither prayers nor threats could have any influence over them. The recital of this adventure had made very different impreſſions on them. A ſudden rumour was ſpread throughout my whole camp; and

and had I not, ſeconded by two or three of my brave friends, ſtruck a terror into theſe wretches by my geſtures and looks, I ſhould have infallibly fallen a victim to their ſedition. One of them I greatly terrified by clapping a piſtol to his head; but all my efforts were of no avail. The horde who followed me, without any preamble, told me that they were *free*; that they no longer conſidered me as their chief; and that they would inſtantly return, with the fifteen Hottentots who had lately arrived. Even my own people, with a bold air, ſignified that they were not diſpoſed to be cut to pieces by thouſands of Caffres, unanimouſly declaring, with loud cries, that they would not follow me; and that they would, without delay, ſet out for the Dutch ſettlements. I however kept firm to my purpoſe, and oppoſed them to the very laſt; but neither my repreſentations, nor the entreaties of Klaas, produced any effect, except on two of them, who at length conſented to expoſe themſelves with me. Old Swanepoel was one of them: but what could four people have done alone? I in vain remonſtrated with theſe ſavages on the ingratitude with which they repaid my condeſcenſion, in ſuffering them

to

to attend me, and on their ſo ſoon forgetting the care, proviſions, and protection, I had afforded them. In vain did I tell them that I conſidered them all as cowards, traitors, and more deteſtable enemies than the Caffres: I only redoubled their fear, and inſpired them with hatred againſt myſelf. I could read in all their countenances that terror had got entire poſſeſſion of their hearts. On this account I reſolved to ſay nothing farther; and on the approach of night, after having ordered watch to be kept with the utmoſt attention, I ſhut myſelf up in my tent. Being informed at break of day that theſe ſtrangers were preparing to depart, with their wives, children, cattle, and all their effects, I forbade any one to take leave of them; and, without loſs of time, gave orders for having every thing ready, that I alſo might ſet out and purſue my journey. In four hours we croſſed the mountain Agter-Bruyntjes-Hoogte; and, being refreſhed by a ſhower of rain which came ſeaſonably to our relief, at the end of four hours we encamped, in order to paſs the night. As we marched along we obſerved ſome more deſerted habitations, the proprietors of which were doubtleſs among the number of the

confederates. The ſoil in this place appeared to be, in general, good; the mountains were covered with large beautiful trees; and the plains, interſperſed with the *mimoſa-nilotica*, abounded with antelopes and gnous: the latter, though excellent eating, are however inferior to the other antelopes.

By the information I had received from the fifteen Hottentots who had incited the horde to revolt, and deprived me of their aſſiſtance, I reckoned that I could not be far diſtant from the place where all theſe Hottentots of the colonies were aſſembled. I continually flattered myſelf with the hopes of finding among them ſome well-diſpoſed people, who approving of my plan of pacification with the Caffres, and the hopes of aſſiſting the unhappy ſufferers who had been ſhipwrecked, would heartily join me, and ſecond my endeavours to afford them relief. The idea of theſe miſerable people haunted me every where; and I could not help reflecting on the melancholy ſituation of the poor women, condemned to drag out their exiſtence amidſt the torment and horror of deſpair. Theſe thoughts were ever preſent to my mind, and attached me more and more to my project; for the deſire of reſtoring them to liberty, and of bringing

bringing them back with me, more and more ſhut my eyes againſt any obſtacle that might occur; and ſuffered me to ſee only the poſſibility of ſucceſs: I was therefore impatient to arrive at this horde of Hottentots.

Next morning, after a march of three hours, undertaken at the break of day, I at length diſcovered the habitation I ſo much wiſhed for. As ſoon as theſe people perceived me, though at a great diſtance, I ſaw them all aſſemble, and form themſelves into a group, before the houſe, while their motions, confuſion, and the attention with which they all at the ſame inſtant turned their eyes towards me, ſufficiently ſhewed that my appearance conſiderably alarmed them, and that my convoy, above all, gave them great uneaſineſs. I however advanced, and, accoſting them with politeneſs, made myſelf known, and told them my name. I pretended that I was travelling under the protection of the Dutch government, to which I was obliged to give an account of my diſcoveries. This concluſion of my diſcourſe, which was very conciſe, ſeemed to impreſs them with great awe; they then received me with every demonſtration of joy, and teſtified with how much pleaſure they ſaw me. They con-

feſſed that my beard had frightened them a little (it had then eleven months growth); that they did not know what to think of my arms, my waggon, and my numerous train; that they had often heard mention made of me; and that an hundred circumſtances had been related to them, in which I had been in danger of loſing my life; but that they had been at laſt aſſured that I had found a veſſel at anchor in the bay of Blettemberg, which had conveyed me to the iſle of Bourbon; and that on this account, when they ſaw me arrive, they had at firſt imagined that I was another perſon. After a hundred queſtions, to which they gave me ſcarcely time to return an anſwer, I mentioned the motives that had induced me to pay them a viſit; and the reſolution I had taken of penetrating to the extremity of Caffraria. I could not help telling them how much I was ſurpriſed that they had not before attempted to ſave the unhappy Europeans, of whoſe fate they were not ignorant; that I hoped to find amongſt them men willing and ready to accompany me to the coaſt where their veſſel had been loſt; that the Dutch government would, without doubt, reward in a noble manner the authors of ſuch a glorious enterpriſe;

and,

and, to incite them the more, I did not fail to add, that amongſt the cargo of the veſſel, which was ſtill partly on the coaſt, each of them might eaſily procure a thouſand comforts for the remainder of their lives. This argument ſeemed to have ſome effect upon them for the moment; but I entertained very few hopes; though they eagerly replied that, if things were as I had repreſented them, it was very proper to go to the aſſiſtance of theſe unfortunate people; who, as they ſaid, were their brothers, and their fellow-creatures.

The moſt cunning, as being the moſt timid of the whole company, conſidering my ſpeech only in that view in which his intereſt was concerned, added for the reſt, that it was more than probable that the Caffres had already plundered the veſſel, and carried away the beſt part of the cargo; that they ſhould find perhaps nothing at all, or, if any thing, not ſo much as would indemnify them for the riſques and expences of ſuch a journey; and that, during their abſence, their wives, and their children, would be left expoſed to the danger of being maſſacred by the Caffres.

From this diſcourſe I was fully convinced that nothing could tempt them to undertake

this expedition. It appeared that they could not carry away a great number of cattle from their enemies; for, after ſharing twenty thouſand ſince the commencement of hoſtilities, theſe ſavages could not have many remaining, as they had been obliged, in order to preſerve thoſe which had eſcaped pillage, to carry them a great way into the interior parts of the country.

I uſed every argument in my power to overcome the reaſoning of this man; and I often told him that he forgot above all the miſerable people for whom I had come to ſolicit aſſiſtance: but he had corrupted his companions, and, after that, not one of them ſhewed the leaſt inclination to ſecond me. As there was no profit in view, I could no longer depend on their aſſiſtance.

As it was in vain to attempt any farther to move them, I had recourſe to imprecations. I threatened them with all the vengeance of government; I wiſhed that ſwarms of Caffres might ſurround their habitations; and, fearing that their example might influence my own people, among whom I found ſome obedience and attachment, I immediately ſet out to purſue my journey.

I had remarked that they were reinforced by a pretty numerous company of Meſtizo Hottentots, who are courageous and enterpriſing, and approach nearer to the whites than the Hottentots. As they had always been the firſt to march againſt the Caffres, and to ſignalize themſelves in every rencounter, I reſolved to leave three of my people behind me, with orders to inſinuate themſelves among theſe Hottentots; and to engage ſome of them to follow me; eſpecially thoſe who were acquainted with the country, and who underſtood the language of the inhabitants. Before I ſuffered them to depart, I inſtructed them in what manner to proceed; and being deſirous of approaching the river *Klein-Vis*, I appointed them to meet me at that place. In three hours time I arrived at this river; and, having croſſed it, I ordered my caravan to halt, as it was neceſſary to ſleep here, in order to wait for the return of my people, and to hear how they had ſucceeded in their negociation. Having obſerved the prints of ſome lions feet, I took as many precautions not to be ſurpriſed by theſe animals as I had taken againſt the Caffres. I ſhould not have been very uneaſy reſpecting the latter, had it been poſſible for

me to find any means of letting them know that I was not among the number of their perſecutors; and that I neither belonged to their nation, nor entertained the ſame ſentiments: but they might have fallen ſuddenly on my camp, and cauſed great devaſtation, before we had explained ourſelves to each other. This conſideration induced me to chooſe for this time, contrary to my uſual cuſtom, an elevated ſpot for my camp; from which I might have an extenſive proſpect every where around. When I had fixed upon one, I ordered my tent to be erected; my carriages and oxen to be properly diſpoſed; and a few huts, merely for the purpoſe of making a ſhew, to be conſtructed at the diſtance of a few paces. I then pitched my military tent within a gun-ſhot of my camp, and covered it with branches of trees, that it might not be perceived; as I intended to paſs the night in it, along with my people: by this manœuvre I deceived the enemy; for had they made their appearance, with a view of ſurpriſing me in my camp, they would undoubtedly have been diſappointed, to their own ruin. I ſhould then have had time to fall upon them, and to ſurpriſe them in my turn.

We

We did not paſs the night in tranquillity, for our dogs diſturbed us ſo much that we enjoyed no ſleep at all.

At the break of day, I perceived at a diſtance three of my Hottentots advancing towards us, accompanied by three ſtrangers: one of them, named Hans, the ſon of a Hottentot woman by a white man, had lived almoſt his whole life among the Caffres, and ſpoke their language very fluently. By giving him a few glaſſes of brandy, which I had kept in reſerve, I ſoon gained his confidence; and I made him tell me every thing that I wiſhed to know, reſpecting the ſtate of affairs at that time. What I learned confirmed me in my opinion, that the Caffres in general are a harmleſs and peaceful people; but he aſſured me that, being continually oppreſſed, plundered, and maſſacred by the whites, they had found themſelves reduced to the neceſſity of taking up arms in their own defence; adding, that the planters every where gave out, that theſe people were barbarous and ſanguinary, in order to juſtify their robberies, and the cruelty which they daily exerciſed againſt them, and which they endeavoured to make appear as repriſals; that, under pretence of their

their cattle being carried away, they had, without regard to age or ſex, exterminated whole hordes of Caffres, plundered them of their oxen, and ravaged their lands; that this method of procuring live ſtock appearing to be much eaſier than to rear them themſelves, they had employed it with ſo much indiſcretion for more than a year, that they had ſhared above twenty thouſand among them; and that they had maſſacred without mercy all thoſe who had attempted to defend them. Hans told me that he had been witneſs to a tranſaction, which I ſhall give here exactly as he related it.

A band of planters having deſtroyed a Caffre village, a young child about twelve years of age eſcaped, and concealed itſelf in a hole, where it was unfortunately diſcovered by a man belonging to a detachment of planters. This man wiſhing to make a ſlave of it, carried it away with him; but the commander taking a fancy to it, inſiſted upon its being put into his hands. The perſon who found it obſtinately refuſed to give it up: both ſides grew warm; and the commander, inflamed with anger, and running up in a furious manner to the innocent victim, cried out to his adverſary, "If I

"cannot

" cannot have the child, it ſhall not be thine;
" upon which diſcharging his fuſee againſt its
" breaſt, it dropped down dead on the ſpot."

I learned alſo, that, in order to amuſe themſelves, theſe wretches had often placed their priſoners at a certain diſtance, and tried who was moſt expert with their fuſees in hitting them. I ſhould never have done were I to relate all the horrid cruelties which they daily commit upon thoſe unhappy ſavages who are under their protection; but private conſiderations, and other very powerful motives, oblige me to be ſilent. Beſides, what avails the voice of one feeling individual, againſt deſpotiſm and force? I have ſaid enough to ſhew the character of the planters of this part of Africa, whom the inactivity of government ſuffers to go on in their exceſſes, and is even afraid of puniſhing. In this place are committed all the cruelties that hell can invent. In a republican ſtate, diſtinguiſhed more than any other by the ſimplicity of its manners, and a ſpirit of philanthropy, the moſt villainous iniquity remains unpuniſhed: becauſe people do not deign to look beyond thoſe objects which ſurround them. If the governor receives information ſometimes, reſpecting theſe horrid abuſes,

the

the diſtance, the time neceſſary to convey intelligence to him, and other circumſtances, perhaps, which it may be prudent not to inquire into, diſguiſe it ſo much when it reaches the town, that it ſcarcely furniſhes ſubject for the converſation of the day.

A planter arrives from the diſtance of an hundred leagues; he complains to the governor that the Caffres had carried away all his cattle; and he requeſts a *commando*, that is to ſay, permiſſion to go and recover his property with the aſſiſtance of his neighbours. The governor ſuſpecting no deceit, or pretending not to diſcover any, takes every thing in the ſame light as it is repreſented to him, and ſees nothing but juſtice in the demand of an impoſtor: a previous enquiry would require too much time, beſides being laborious and embarraſſing. To grant permiſſion is eaſy; it coſts little, and is only a ſingle word. This fatal word is therefore written, and it becomes the ſentence of death paſſed againſt thouſands of ſavages, who have neither the ſame reſources nor the ſame means of defence. The monſter who thus deceives the credulity of the governor, returns ſatisfied amidſt the accomplices of his rapacity, and gives to his *commando* whatever extent he

may

may find uſeful to his intereſt: a new maſſacre then takes place, which is only a prelude to more carnage; for if the Caffres have the audacity to recover, by force or by ſtratagem, the cattle taken from them in conſequence of this order, ſurreptitiouſly obtained from the governor, and which continues in force till there are no more victims, theſe planters ſatiate their vengeance by the moſt horrid ſlaughter.

Thus did this war, or rather this pillaging, continue all the time that I reſided in Africa. Neither commercial ſpeculations nor a fondneſs for any ſervice conducted me to the Cape. The natural impulſe of my diſpoſition, and a deſire of acquiring new knowledge, made me direct my courſe to that part of the world: I arrived there perfectly free, and with a mind not in the leaſt biaſſed by prejudice. I made myſelf better acquainted with the interior parts of the country, and the unknown natives by whom it is inhabited, than with any of the colonies belonging to the Cape, or even the Cape itſelf, which I did not know, but at the different periods of my return. I had no perſonal intereſt in view to make me be ſuſpected of partiality; but I have every where ſeen

very

very powerful reaſons for obſerving, that the foreſeeing eye of policy has been opened too late on thoſe poſſeſſions which are at a diſtance, and which every day become more remote from the metropolis. I have ſeen that the authority of a governor, however great it may be, does not extend far enough to check at their ſource thoſe dreadful irregularities, which are continued, and ſtill increaſing, in the interior parts of the country. Should it ever happen that the Caffres, inceſſantly harraſſed, unite in ſupport of the common cauſe with the neighbouring nations, who begin alſo to complain of the planters, their union would certainly occaſion the greateſt diſorder; and who knows what might be the conſequence of ſuch a confederation, formed for the purpoſe of defending inalienable rights, and of avenging ancient injuries? There are many methods by which government might prevent theſe misfortunes; and it is full time that they ſhould be employed, for the danger increaſes by delay. There have been inſtances of the governor, when informed of ſome cruelties exerciſed againſt the ſavages, ſummoning in vain the perſon who was the author of them to come to the Cape, and give an account of his conduct. The

criminal

criminal has not ſo much as deigned to return any anſwer to the order ſent to him; he has continued to harraſs and plunder in the ſame manner as before: and his diſobedience has been attended with no bad conſequences to him; nay it has been even ſoon forgotten.

One day, while diſcourſing with ſome of the planters on theſe abuſes, ſeveral of them told me that they had more than once received ſuch orders from the governor, without ever paying the leaſt attention to them. Growing a little warm in the cauſe, I expreſſed my aſtoniſhment that in ſuch circumſtances the governor did not ſend a detachment to enforce obedience to his orders; and, in caſe of a refuſal, to ſeize upon the culprit, and to conduct him to town under a ſtrong guard. "Are you "well aware," ſaid they," what would be the "reſult of ſuch an attempt? Aſſembling all "in an inſtant, we would maſſacre the half "of the ſoldiers, ſalt their fleſh, and ſend "it back by thoſe we might ſpare; with "threats of doing the ſame thing to thoſe "who ſhould be bold enough to appear among "us afterwards." Such was their anſwer; to which I thought it would be altogether uſeleſs to offer any reply. To deal with people of

of this character, muſt be a work of great difficulty; and no ſmall ſhare of addreſs will be neceſſary to reduce them to obedience. I do not conſider it as impoſſible, that, ſhaking off the yoke, they may ſome day dictate laws to the head of the colony; and that day will be when a man of abilities, gaining the minds and confidence of the multitude, ſhall preſent to them, under ſeducing colours, a view of independence and liberty. They are already too ſenſible of the facility with which ſuch an enterpriſe may be undertaken; and of the advantages that will reſult from its ſucceſs. Nothing will be neceſſary but to put them in mind that they are about ten thouſand in number, all crafty and reſolute, and all accuſtomed to hunting; that every ſhot they may fire will do execution; that without difficulty, and without danger, they may beat and deſtroy any forces with which the governor may oppoſe them; that they will enjoy abundance the moment they ceaſe to acknowledge the irkſome and often tyrannical laws of government, which are contrary to every kind of private proſperity; that placed in a delightful climate, the poſſeſſors of the fineſt fields and the moſt beautiful woods in the country,

abundantly ſtocked with game of all kinds, they may, by adding to all theſe advantages thoſe of cultivating the earth, and breeding flocks, procure to themſelves, from the firſt hand, every reſource ariſing from barter; and that, by means of the harbours and roads which are to be found in great plenty on the coaſts of their territories, it is in their power to bring the induſtry of other nations amongſt them, to extend their population, to increaſe their riches, and to have every convenience that an extenſive foreign trade can ſupply. The government at the Cape are already fully ſenſible of the importance of theſe reflections; and this perhaps is one of the juſteſt cauſes of their apparent ſupineneſs with reſpect to the planters. They know the genius and character of theſe robuſt people, almoſt all educated in the midſt of the woods; and they were more cautious in their conduct towards them during my reſidence at the Cape, becauſe they thought the fate of the whole town depended upon their powerful aſſiſtance, had the Engliſh in the war of 1781 attempted to make a deſcent there, as they expected. The following anecdote will ſhew how far they were to be depended on:—An alarm

having been ſpread, though without any foundation, in leſs than twenty-four hours, from a thouſand to twelve hundred of them made their appearance in a body; and theſe would have been followed by all the reſt, had not an order been iſſued to ſtop them.

Thoſe however would be in great error, who from what I have ſaid ſhould imagine that all theſe planters are ſo many Cæſars. This is far from being the caſe; and indeed ſuch an idea would ill agree with the accounts I have before given when ſpeaking of their war with the Caffres, and of their poſſeſſions every where abandoned and deſerted. Born for the moſt part among rocks, a ſavage and ruſtic education has made them like ſo many giants with reſpect to ſtrength; but, though accuſtomed from their earlieſt infancy to watch and ſurpriſe the monſtrous animals of Africa, they are abſolutely not fit but for a firſt attack, or to ſucceed in an ambuſcade. They would not ſtand in the open field, nor would they ever return to a ſecond charge. They are not acquainted with that courage which is inſpired by a ſenſe of honour, but with that only which ariſes from a conſciouſneſs of one's ſtrength

ſtrength or dexterity: and if the reader calls to mind my adventure with them in the Bay of Saldanha, it may be eaſily ſeen that it tends ſtrongly to corroborate what I have here advanced. The ſame thing cannot be ſaid of the greater part of the women. Courageous with reflection, their deliberate coolneſs knows neither obſtacles nor fear; being equally ſkilful as their huſbands in managing their horſes, and in the uſe of fire arms, they are much more indefatigable, and never retreat on the appearance of danger: they are real Amazons.

I was acquainted with a widow who managed her own plantation; and when the wild beaſts came to alarm her flocks, ſhe mounted her horſe, followed them in cloſe purſuit, and never left them till ſhe had either deſtroyed them, or obliged them to quit her poſſeſſions.

In one of my excurſions two years after to the great Nimiqua Land, I ſaw upon a very ſolitary plantation a young girl of twenty, who always accompanied her father on horſeback, when he took the field, at the head of his people, to repel the Boſhmen who came to diſturb his repoſe. In defiance of their

poiſoned arrows, ſhe would purſue them with fury, overtake them in their courſe, and fire upon them without mercy.

The annals of the Cape make mention of a great number of women who have diſtinguiſhed themſelves by acts of intrepidity that might do honour to the moſt reſolute of the other ſex.

The tragical fate of a widow, who lived upon a very remote plantation with her two ſons, the oldeſt of whom was not above eighteen years of age, ſtill afforded a ſubject for converſation at the Cape, when I arrived there. One obſcure night ſhe and all her family being awakened by the kicking and bellowing of her oxen and cows, which were in an encloſure not far diſtant, every body flew to arms, and haſtened towards the place from which the noiſe proceeded. When they reached the ſpot, they found a lion, which, having got over the pales, was making dreadful devaſtation among the cattle; and no reſource was left but to enter the encloſure, to inveſt the ferocious animal, and to kill him. None of the ſlaves or Hottentots of this woman had however ſufficient courage to try this expedient; and even her two ſons would not venture to preſent themſelves before the ferocious beaſt. In this dilemma

lemma the intrepid widow entered alone, armed with a fuſee ; and penetrating to the lion, which on account of the darkneſs was ſcarcely perceptible, ſhe diſcharged her piece : but unluckily the animal being only wounded, darted upon her with the utmoſt fury, and threw her down. On hearing the cries of their poor mother, the two children haſtened to her relief ; and having become deſperate at this horrid ſight, while the formidable lion was engaged with his prey, they fell upon him, and ſtrangled him, though too late, on the mangled corpſe of their mother. Beſides ſeveral deep wounds which ſhe had received in her throat, and ſeveral parts of her body, the lion had torn off one of her hands above the wriſt, and devoured it. Every poſſible aſſiſtance was immediately given her ; but ſhe expired that evening in great agony, amidſt the unavailing lamentations of her children and ſlaves aſſembled around her.

I have already ſaid that Hans gave me every information that I required reſpecting Caffraria. He told me that the territories in which I then was belonged to a powerful prince, who reſided at the diſtance of thirty leagues from us, more towards the north, and that he was named

king *Faroo*. He adviſed me to penetrate as far as the place of his abode; aſſuring me that I had nothing to fear, and no danger to run: on the contrary, he told me that both the prince and his ſubjects would receive me with great pleaſure; in hopes that, on my return to the Cape, a relation of what I had ſeen of their manners, their character and their way of life, would efface thoſe unfavourable ideas every where formed of them, from the accounts of the planters, whom they deteſted; and that perhaps they would then be ſuffered to enjoy tranquillity, the only favour which they requeſted from the white people.

On the firſt view, this reaſoning was plauſible and ſeducing; and I was fully ſenſible of all the advantages that might ariſe to me from the execution of ſuch a project. I ſuffered myſelf, indeed, to be almoſt perſuaded; but, on the other hand, if through imprudence, or exceſs of confidence, I ſhould loſe the fruits of all my travels, or if I ſhould happen to be maſſacred, this ſtep would be conſidered as a maſter-piece of folly and extravagance. I well knew the fickle and unſteady diſpoſition of the offspring of the whites and the Hottentots; and I reflected, for the firſt time, on what this

man

man might be capable of doing. The bribe of a glaſs of brandy might make him a traitor: he was a friend to the Caffres; had paſſed part of his time amongſt them; and, beſides this, he had come from a retreat which I had every reaſon to ſuſpect, and was there perhaps only to watch the motions of the planters, and to betray them. Might it not be poſſible that his intention was to ſacrifice me, that he might ſhare my effects with the Caffres; and to acquire ſome merit among them, by leading me into a ſnare?

Having weighed theſe conſiderations for a long time, agitated by a thouſand contrary ideas, and incapable of forming any reſolution myſelf, I ſuddenly fixed upon an eaſier and much more prudent plan. By theſe means I gained a little more time to indulge in new reflections, and to acquire better information, without expoſing either my perſon or my fortune. I reſolved to ſend a deputation to king *Faroo*; and, on the firſt overture made to Hans, he accepted this commiſſion without the leaſt heſitation. Though his conduct upon this occaſion ſeemed to preſage well, I was however determined to take every precaution. This young meſtizo promiſed to engage two

or three of his friends to undertake the journey along with him; and to theſe I added two of my moſt faithful Hottentots, Adams and Slanger, who were to give an account to the king of every thing I had done for eleven months before, from the time that I quitted the Cape. In order that he might be enabled to judge that curioſity alone had conducted me to his territories, I charged my meſſengers to tell him that, being born in another world, and above all a ſtranger in Africa, I was in no manner either a friend to the planters who were carrying on war againſt him, or an accomplice in their deſigns; that I did not even live amongſt them; that I highly diſapproved of their conduct; and, in a word, that he might reſt aſſured that, as long as I remained in his country, he would have no occaſion to be uneaſy at my conduct or motions, as they tended to one harmleſs end, that of procuring ſuch objects as related to my taſte and ſtudies; and that, far from carrying ravage and terror into his poſſeſſions, I would on the contrary embrace every opportunity of being uſeful to his ſubjects and to himſelf, as I had been to ſeveral Hottentot hordes, who neither ſuſpected my ſincerity,

nor

nor refuſed my aſſiſtance: I added, that the government at the Cape, to whom I would give a faithful account of every thing I had ſeen, would loſe no time to reſtore tranquillity in his territories, and to re-eſtabliſh that harmony which had ſubſiſted between him and the planters. Having inſtructed my deputies in this manner, particularly thoſe belonging to my camp, to whom I enjoined the greateſt ſecrecy reſpecting certain particulars which I entruſted to them alone (ſuch, for example, as the expreſs orders of bringing ſome Caffres along with them, that I might be able to judge what degree of confidence they repoſed in me, and to ſee how far I ought to grant them mine), I gave them a few preſents for the prince, and diſmiſſed them. Having promiſed to return ſoon to Koks-Kraal, where I was to wait for them, each of them made ſuch proviſion as he thought neceſſary, and then they departed.

I myſelf ſet out in the morning; and, after a march of three hours, we found ourſelves on the banks of the Groot-Vis-Rivier, where the heat was exceſſive. Though the earth, covered all over with large round pebbles, rendered the way exceedingly laborious for the oxen, we

we proceeded along the banks of the river; but, overcome by fatigue, we were forced to halt, at the diſtance of three hundred paces from its current: it was then only four in the afternoon. Whilſt we were making the uſual preparations to enable us to paſs the night in tranquillity, I walked towards the banks of the river; not far from which I perceived the remains of a kraal belonging to the Caffres. Curioſity having induced me to go up to it, I found ſeveral huts perfectly entire, and others wholly deſtroyed: but I beheld a more diſmal ſpectacle in ſome human bones which lay ſcattered here and there. From their apparent age, I concluded that they were the relics of thoſe unfortunate wretches whom the planters had made the firſt victims of their revenge; and that they had been left there ſince the commencement of this unjuſt war.

We paſſed the night of the 10th without any interruption. Some hyænas, indeed, paid us a viſit; but being accuſtomed to ſuch gueſts, we were under very little uneaſineſs. In the morning, my Hottentots, on their return from procuring water, informed me that they had ſeen ſeveral freſh traces of koedoes * and hip-

* The *antilope oryx* of Pallas. T.

popotami.

popotami. As our ſtock of proviſion was nearly exhauſted, and the weather favourable, I reſolved to ſpend this day in hunting.

My people having diſperſed themſelves on the banks of the river, in order that they might diſcover the preciſe ſpot which theſe hippopotami haunted, I myſelf went to the other ſide, in hopes of finding ſome koedoes or other game. I however ſaw only ſome ſtraggling antelopes, and a few flocks of oſtriches. Being on foot, and finding that I could by no means approach them, I began to fear that the whole day would be ſpent in contemplation and courſing; but, after having traverſed a great deal of ground, I ſuddenly obſerved, in a plain which was covered with long graſs and a few ſhrubs, ſeven koedoes, which very luckily did not perceive me. Followed by a man who attended me, I approached with great precaution; and, when we were within two hundred paces of them, I ordered him to fire firſt; for, as I was certain that I could overtake theſe animals by running, I wiſhed to reſerve my ſhot till the moſt dubious moment. As ſoon as he had fired, they all betook themſelves to flight, as I expected; but very luckily as they paſſed me, at the diſtance of about

thirty paces, I killed the only male which was in the flock. My Hottentot maintained that this was the animal he had fired at; but I convinced him of his miſtake, for we found only one wound and one ball in it. Having covered it with a few branches, and tied my handkerchief to the end of a pole, which I fixed in the ground, to frighten away ferocious animals, we ſet out in purſuit of the reſt of the koedoes; becauſe, the male being killed, I was certain that the females would not go far. We obſerved ſome traces of blood, which plainly ſhewed that one of them had been wounded: and indeed, at the diſtance of four hundred paces, we found one juſt expiring. My Hottentot, whom I had reproached for ſhooting badly, was highly flattered by this event; but he had taken aim at the male, and it was by chance that he hit the female. Having ſkinned it, and taken out its bowels, we thought we might then both of us be able, as the diſtance was not very great, to convey it to the ſpot where we had left the male. Being conſiderably fatigued by this labour, and our appetites beginning to be whetted, we kindled a few ſticks, and broiled the liver. I do not know whether it was owing to our hunger,

or to the delicacy of the food, but I remember that, though we had neither ſalt nor bread *, I could ſcarcely be ſatisfied with it; and that this was one of the moſt delicious repaſts I ever made in my life: after this we tied the four feet of the animal together, and with a pole carried it upon our ſholders to the other which we had killed. I then diſpatched my Hottentot to bring me two horſes, with a few of his companions, and we ſoon conveyed the game to our camp. Some inſtantly filled the kettles with it, while others broiled ſteaks of it upon the hot coals; and, in leſs than two hours, two thirds of the fleſh diſappeared.

The Hottentots are gluttonous as long as there is abundance of proviſions; but, in times of ſcarcity, they can be contented with a very little. In this reſpect I may compare them to hyænas, or other carnivorous animals, which devour all their prey in an inſtant, without thinking on the future; and which indeed remain ſeveral days without finding any nouriſhment, and are ſometimes obliged to appeaſe their hunger with clay. A Hottentot is capable of eating in one day ten or twelve

* The latter I had not eat for ſome time.

pounds

pounds of meat; but on preſſing occaſions, a few locuſts, a piece of honey-comb, and often a bit of the leather of his ſandals, will ſuffice him. I could never make mine comprehend that it was prudent to reſerve a little proviſion for the day following. They not only eat as much as they can, but they diſtribute what remains to whomſoever they meet with; they are never diſturbed reſpecting the conſequence of this prodigality. *We will hunt*, ſay they—or *we will ſleep*. The latter is a reſource which often relieves them in caſes of neceſſity. I never paſſed in thoſe barren and deſart places, where game is ſcarce, without ſeeing whole hordes of theſe ſavages aſleep in their kraals, a too certain evidence of their wretched ſituation; but what may appear very ſurpriſing, though I have obſerved it more than twenty times, is, that they command ſleep, and deceive at their pleaſure the moſt preſſing want of nature. There are however ſome wakeful moments ſuperior to habitude, and to all their powers. In ſuch caſes they employ another expedient no leſs ſtrange, and which, though incredible, is nevertheleſs ſo certain that it cannot be controverted. I have ſeen them confine their ſtomachs by a leather bandage,

bandage, in order to diminiſh their hunger, which they endure for a long time, and appeaſe with very little. This curious method of employing ligatures is alſo among them a general remedy, which they uſe for all diſeaſes. They bind a cloſe bandage round the head, or any other part affected, and think that in confining the diſtemper they drive it away. I have been more than once preſent at ſuch operations; and, after they were finiſhed according to the patients wiſh, I have ſeen them become quite compoſed, and reply with more readineſs when I enquired tenderly how they did, and aſſure me that they found great relief. However whimſical this cuſtom may appear, it would not be ſo generally adopted by theſe people, did it not anſwer the high idea which they entertain of it.

Thoſe Hottentots whom I had ſent to ſearch for hippopotami ſoon returned, and informed me, that in coaſting along the river they obſerved one in a place ſo covered with reeds, that they found it impoſſible to reach the water in order to examine it more cloſely, but that every time he approached the ſurface to breathe they had heard him diſtinctly; that they had in vain fired ſeveral times to frighten him,

him, and make him change his poſition; and that in all probability next morning he would chooſe ſome other ſpot more favourable to our deſigns. They had fallen in with about twenty buffaloes alſo, but they did not kill one.

The night following, being the 11th of the month, we were viſited by ſome lions, hyænas, and jackals, which kept us continually on the watch till two o'clock in the morning. The ſmell of our ſteaks and freſh proviſions had undoubtedly attracted them. We found it very difficult to keep our horſes quiet, and eſpecially the one I had bought from Mr. Mulder in the country of Auteniqua. On hearing the cries of theſe ferocious beaſts, this young animal was ſo terrified, that we were under the neceſſity of putting ſhackles on his four legs, and double reins to his head, to prevent him from deſtroying himſelf: the appearance of day reſtored us however to our former tranquillity.

The evening before I had ſent a Hottentot to reconnoitre Koks-Kraal, which was the rendezvous where I agreed to wait for my deputies. They had been gone only three days; and as I could not expect to ſee them ſo ſoon,

I thought

I thought that this retreat might enable me to follow a new plan of life; and it was here that I intended for a little while to eſtabliſh my petty empire, if diſagreeable news, or ſome misfortune, did not oblige my meſſengers to return. I had however no time to loſe; and precaution, always more indiſpenſable, and which I made a moſt ſevere law, ſufficiently engaged me to be expeditious. On the report of my commiſſioners, I judged that we might encamp very conveniently in Koks-Kraal; and the firſt view of this charming ſpot did not deceive my expectation. Having reached it in three hours, we found an encloſure about fifty feet ſquare, formed by a dry hedge of branches of trees and thorns; it was deſtroyed in ſome places, but it required ſcarcely a day to repair it. For ſheltering our cattle the diſcovery of this encloſure was ſo much the luckier, as it commanded a view of almoſt the whole neighbourhood; on one ſide we obſerved the river, from which we were diſtant not more than three or four hundred paces. Wild beaſts, however, were not the principal objects of my uneaſineſs; I thought more of ſecuring them from the Caffres diſ-

perſed over the country. I conſidered that, not knowing the pacific meaſures which I was purſuing with one of their kings, and not being acquainted with my manner of thinking reſpecting them, they might every moment come to attack my camp; and the perſon whom I chiefly dreaded, was he to whom I had entruſted the conditions of my embaſſy. Having ſeen with his own eyes what number of people remained with me, and my ſtrength as well as my weakneſs, and knowing from my own information my plan and the place where we were to meet, it was in his power either to corrupt ſuch of my people as accompanied him, or to betray and aſſaſſinate them by the way. What was there at that time to prevent him from coming unexpectedly at the head of a numerous party, and falling upon me, and, by one of thoſe ſtrokes too common in war, effacing my name from the number of the living? I muſt openly confeſs, that with the well-formed deſign of ſelling my life at a dear rate, my terror increaſed in proportion to the precautions which I every day took in reſpect to my ſafety; but, as the time after the departure of my envoys increaſed, my thoughts became a little

little calmer: long abſence leſſened the danger, and theſe diſmal ideas at length became familiar to me.

Having ordered my large tent to be erected without the encloſure, and at one of its extremities, I cauſed it to be ſurrounded by a few falſe huts to deceive the enemy, as we had attempted at Klyn-Vis-Rivier. At the end of the encloſure, oppoſite my tent, and in one of its angles, we formed a ſeparate place for my horſes, with another for my ſheep and goats. Near theſe I erected my ſmall tent, in which I propoſed to ſleep; and we raiſed the hedge of the encloſure ſo much with prickly trees, that it was impoſſible for any ferocious animal to leap over it: by theſe means my flocks were perfectly ſafe in a ſpace forty feet ſquare, which was ſufficiently wide and commodious. This kind of a fortification might, in caſe of neceſſity, have even ſerved both me and my people as a place of retreat, where we could have braved two thouſand Caffres.

Theſe arrangements ſatisfied all my companions, ſtill more uneaſy than their chief, and I ſaw them gradually reſume their former gaiety. We did not however neglect the uſual precautions on the approach of night:

at the diſtance of fifty paces from each ſide of the encloſure we kindled large fires, to drive away the lions and the hyænas, and, for the greater ſecurity, we lighted others around us. This diſpoſition was attended with the completeſt ſucceſs. I purſued my ordinary occupations, and thought of nothing elſe but hunting. Having obſerved the firſt afternoon ſome peroquets flying through the air in order to go and drink at the river, I watched them, and was lucky enough to kill one of them. It was a new ſpecies, which has never yet been deſcribed: its ſize approaches that of the aſh-coloured peroquet of Guinea; its general colour is a green of different ſhades, but the legs and the tip of the wings are of a beautiful orange. I ſhall give an ample account of it in my deſcription of birds. We were viſited alſo during the day-time by conſiderable troops of *bawians*, or apes of the ſame ſpecies as my friend *Kees*. Theſe animals, aſtoniſhed at ſeeing ſo many people, were ſtill more ſo to obſerve one of their own kind remaining very peaceably amongſt us, and to hear him anſwer them in good language. One day they came down from a little hill which ſtood near my camp; and in leſs than half an hour

above an hundred of them, prompted by curioſity ſurrounded us, continually repeating *gou-a-cou*, *gou-a-cou*, for the voice of Kees had greatly emboldened them. There were many among them much larger than the reſt, but they were all of the ſame ſpecies: they performed a thouſand tricks and geſticulations, which I ſhould in vain attempt to deſcribe. Thoſe would be much deceived who ſhould judge of them from thoſe degenerated apes, which pine in a ſtate of ſlavery, langour, and fear, in Europe, or which are ſtifled by the careſſes of our ladies, or poiſoned by their dainties. The thick atmoſphere of our climates damps their natural livelineſs, and deſtroys them, nor can they be made to laugh but by the force of blows.

A ſingularity however, which I have already had occaſion to remark, engaged my attention. Kees, which I held by the paw, though he knew theſe animals to be of the ſame ſpecies, and replied to them, would never go near them. I dragged him towards them, but, contented with being on their guard, they ſhewed no ſigns of fear, and ſaw me approach with as much tranquillity as Kees ſhewed agitation in reſiſting. All of a ſudden he made his eſcape

from me, and ran to hide himſelf in my tent. The cauſe of this terror was perhaps owing to his being afraid that they would carry him along with them. He was very ſtrongly attached to me, and I wiſh to do him honour for this ſentiment. In the mean time the reſt of the apes continued their geſticulations, and ſeemed to force themſelves to exhibit tricks and emit cries in order to amuſe me, till fatigued by their noiſe, and tired of this ſpectacle, I wiſhed to procure myſelf another. On diſcharging a fuſee, all my dogs were ſoon at their heels; and it was very amuſing to ſee in how light a manner and with what nimbleneſs they fled; they inſtantly diſperſed themſelves, and, leaping from rock to rock, diſappeared with the velocity of lightning.

On the 13th I was awakened very early in the morning by the cry of a bird which I did not know. Its tones, which were full and well ſupported, had no reſemblance to any thing I had ever before heard. As they appeared to be really extraordinary, I inſtantly ſtarted up, and got cloſe to the bird without being perceived; yet as it was ſcarcely day, I ſaw it but very indiſtinctly through the buſhy branches of a tree upon which it was perched,

and I was ſo unfortunate as to ſuffer it to eſcape. By its flight, however, I could diſtinguſh that it was a goat-ſucker *; I indeed was not deceived, for ſome days after I had an opportunity of killing ſeveral of them.

This bird is very different from the goat-ſucker known in Europe, and which has only one plaintive cry like that of the common toad, which probably has given riſe to its French name †; but that of Africa is very diſtinct, and ſuch as cannot poſſibly be imitated. It continues ſinging for whole hours after ſunſet, ſometimes during the whole night; and this difference, added to that of its feathers, makes it a new ſpecies.

I killed alſo ſeveral very pretty birds; and among others a barbet ‡, of a very ſmall unknown ſpecies, and a cuckoo which I named the bawler §, becauſe its ſhrill cry may indeed be heard at a great diſtance: this cry, or, to expreſs myſelf more correctly, this ſong, has no reſemblance to that of our cuckoo in Europe,

* The goat ſucking owl; called alſo in ſome parts of England the churn owl, or fern owl. T.

† *Crapaud volant*, or the flying toad. T.

‡ Bucco capenſis Linn. T.

§ In French *Criard*.

and its plumage alſo is entirely different. In this canton I found likewiſe a great many of the golden cuckoos deſcribed by Buffon under the name of the *green-golden cuckoo* of the Cape. This bird is undoubtedly the moſt beautiful of its ſpecies, for its plumage is enriched with white, green, and gold. Perched on the tops of large trees, it continually repeats, and with a varied modulation, theſe ſyllables, *di, di, didric*, as diſtinctly as I have written them; for this reaſon I have named it the *didric*. As I was thus amuſing myſelf in purſuing ſome ſmall birds, I perceived a flock of vultures and crows, which were making a great noiſe, and ſoaring round and round in the air. When I reached the ſpot almoſt below them, I ſaw the remains of a buffalo, which had been devoured by lions perhaps not twenty-four hours before. On the firſt view of the field of battle, I concluded that the conflict muſt have been terrible; all the ground around ſeemed to have been beat and trod upon; I could count how many times the buffalo had been thrown down, and I found tufts of the lion's mane ſcattered here and there, which the former had without doubt torn away either with his feet or his horns.

Having

Having obſerved near this ſpot, which was not far diſtant from the river, the freſh traces of two hippopotami, I followed theſe marks, and eaſily diſcovered the place where the animals had again entered the water. I liſtened very attentively, but I heard nothing; and the banks of the river were ſo encumbered with reeds and ſhrubs, that I could not get near them. Theſe animals therefore had every advantage to enable them to conceal themſelves, and to avoid riſing up from the water to breathe. It would have been loſing time to wait for them; the hour of dinner was approaching, and I was both tired and hungry. As I had advanced too far in purſuit of my goat-ſucker and other birds, I ſet out to return to my camp by the ſhorteſt way; and while I was going towards the eaſt, and directing my route by the ſun, the report of a fuſee, fired almoſt at my ear, made me ſtart, and filled me with the greater fear, as it was unexpected. Knowing that it could be fired only by ſome of my people, I ran towards the place whence the ſound ſeemed to proceed, and found one of my worſt markſmen waſting my powder in vain. He told me that he had been watching an hippopotamus from the break of day, that he had fired

fired at him, and that he had not the leaſt doubt of his being killed. A very unſkilful hand may ſometimes do execution by chance; and though it was neceſſary to wait more than a quarter of an hour before we could ſee the animal riſe up from the water, I reſolved to watch him myſelf, and to ſend my Hottentot in queſt of more people; giving him orders at the ſame time to bring me ſome refreſhment. At the end of an hour and an half, which I paſſed very impatiently, my people arrived, but the hippopotamus had not appeared. The hunter however aſſured me, that after he had fired he had ſeen him plunge into the water, and had obſerved alſo a violent ebullition and ſeveral ſpots of blood on the ſurface. He added, that the current being very ſtrong, the animal might perhaps have been carried away by it, which I thought very probable; on this account he ſet out in hopes of finding it lower down, while I returned to my camp to diſſect the birds which I had killed.

About three in the afternoon we were attacked by a dreadful ſtorm; and the foreſt which bordered the mountain was ſeveral times ſtruck with lightning. One of my people returned with an antelope he had killed;

killed; and he who had fired at the river horſe came back very late without having ſeen any thing. This diſappointment afforded his companions a ſubject for ridiculing him. He became the object of the ſarcaſms of all my wits; every one put in his word; and they wiſhed to perſuade him that the animal at which he fired had been only a guana*. Theſe pleaſantries being inſenſibly converted into abuſe, I obſerved that their ridicule was about to be terminated by a combat with fiſts; but by one word I put an end to their warmth, and made the orators be ſilent.

On the 14th the rain fell ſo abundantly during the whole night, that it extinguiſhed our fires, nor was it poſſible for us to kindle them again. Our dogs made a dreadful noiſe, which kept us all awake, but we ſaw no ferocious animals. I obſerved that in theſe rainy nights the lion, the tyger, and the hyæna, are entirely ſilent, and it is then that the greateſt danger is to be apprehended; for as theſe animals never ceaſe on ſuch occaſions to range through the fields, they fall upon their prey without giving warning, and without allowing

* The guana is a kind of large lizard, very common in the rivers of Africa.

people

people time to be upon their guard. What ſtill adds to the dread which this diſagreeable circumſtance occaſions is, that the moiſture deprives the dogs of their ſenſe of ſmelling, and on this account they are of no uſe. My people were too well aware of this danger; for when the rain had put out our fires, it was with great difficulty they could be prevailed on to re-light them, ſo much were they afraid of being ſurpriſed.

It muſt indeed be allowed, that ſtormy nights in the deſarts of Africa exhibit a picture of deſolation, and people find themſelves involuntarily ſtruck with terror. When they are ſurpriſed by theſe deluges, they ſoon penetrate a tent, and inundate all the mats; continued flaſhes of lightning in their rapid paſſage exhibit a momentary blaze amidſt the moſt profound obſcurity; the loud claps of thunder, which burſt forth on all ſides with an awful noiſe, ſeem to claſh together, and are multiplied by being re-echoed from mountain to mountain; the cries of domeſtic animals, and a few intervals of dreadful ſilence, all conſpire to render the ſcene more diſmal, while the danger of being attacked by ferocious beaſts ſtill adds to the common terror: nothing

thing but the appearance of day can leſſen the dread, and reſtore tranquillity to nature.

The following morning was ſtill gloomy: the atmoſphere was loaded with clouds, and the rain redoubled at intervals. Being therefore little diſpoſed to go abroad, I employed myſelf in reviewing my collection of birds, which I had recently preſerved. As I had a ſufficient quantity to fill a box, I arranged them in one with much care, and daubed it over with pitch as uſual, to prevent inſects from getting into it. The number of thoſe which I then poſſeſſed, added to thoſe I had before ſent from the country of Auteniqua, already exceeded ſeven hundred.

About four in the afternoon the ſky became ſerene, and very ſeaſonably revived our drooping ſpirits. We reſumed therefore our uſual occupations, and I amuſed myſelf with making my people fire at a mark, which afforded them much entertainment. From time to time I took care to grant them this indulgence, as it exerciſed them; and I remarked, from the commencement of my journey, that their courage increaſed in proportion to their dexterity: but they conſidered as a great favour what I permitted only with a political

a political view of procuring more ſafety to my caravan. The ordinary prize was a ration of tobacco; a bottle ſuſpended from a rock was the mark, and the conditions were to break it at the diſtance of two hundred and fifty paces. One named Pit gained the prize that day at the fifty-fourth ſhot; and he very generouſly ſhared it with all the reſt who had contended. The balls were not all loſt; they were almoſt all found at the bottom of the rock, but it was neceſſary to have them all caſt again.

As the ſetting of the ſun ſeemed to announce fine weather the next morning, I formed a deſign of hunting hippopotami in proper form. I ſent ſeveral men to try what diſcoveries they could make on the banks of the river: we cleaned all our fire-arms, and we caſt ſeveral balls of a large ſize, into which I put, according to the African cuſtom, an eighth part of tin. By theſe means balls are capable of making a greater reſiſtance, and they penetrate better, becauſe they do not become flat when they meet with bones. Their effect would be more certain were it poſſible to employ pure tin only; but being then much lighter, they would not fly ſo far, nor hit ſo exactly.

exactly. After our fires were kindled for the night, which was not eaſily done, as the earth was moiſt, and our wood exceedingly wet, I regaled my people with tea, and I am certain that upon one ounce they poured at leaſt fifty pints of boiling water.

This evening was one of the moſt amuſing I had ever ſpent. I had ſtill the ſame jokes and the ſame merry tales from theſe good people, who, all ſeated around a large fire, endeavoured to divert their maſter, and, deſirous to engage his attention and give him proofs of their attachment and ſincerity, made him eaſily forget what maſter-piece was crowned that day in ſuch or ſuch an academy. My Lyceum was undoubtedly as good as any other of the ſame kind. The proweſs to be ſhewn next morning in hunting the hippopotamus was above all brought upon the carpet: every body hoped to be of the party; and I found great difficulty in arranging it ſo as to pleaſe all. I was deſirous that ſome of theſe ſportſmen ſhould diſperſe themſelves throughout the country, to ſhoot antelopes, on which I depended more for proviſions than on hippopotami, as the banks of the river were ſo covered with reeds and large trees, that

that it always appeared to me more and more difficult to diſcover them, and to get near them. As night was in the mean time advancing, and as I did not ſee thoſe hunters arrive whom I had ſent out to make diſcoveries, I ordered my largeſt piece to be fired three times; yet it was nearly half an hour before they returned any anſwer. At length, however, we heard, four or five minutes after each other, three reports, which made us conclude that they had perhaps fallen in with ſome of theſe animals. A quarter of an hour after, we heard three reports more; but the ſound did not ſeem to proceed from ſo great a diſtance as the former: at length the firing continued at certain intervals, and ſeemed more and more to approach us; which induced us to believe that theſe unfortunate people were purſued by ſome ferocious animals. On this account, I ran immediately to meet them; and, when I found them, they appeared to be trembling and in great terror. They had, however, ſeen nothing; but, by the reſtleſſneſs of the two dogs which they had carried with them, it was too clear that their lives had been in danger from lions, and that they had narrowly eſcaped. The dogs indeed had not deceived

deceived them. I learned from them alſo, that they had heard the ſnorting of ſome hippopotami above the place in which they had hid themſelves: this account renewed my hopes; but, as we had great need of repoſe, I retired to my tent. Scarcely had I fallen aſleep, when, at about half an hour after eleven, I was ſuddenly alarmed by the roaring of a lion, which was heard by another, that ſeemed at firſt to anſwer from a very great diſtance; but in a quarter of an hour the latter joined him, and both of them began to prowl around our camp. We marched about, however, with ſo much boldneſs and ſpeed, and we fired ſo often, that we intimidated them by the noiſe, and obliged them to depart. We were now under no doubt that they were the ſame which had followed our hunters. On this occaſion they were indebted for their ſafety to the dogs, which they had carried along with them: being informed by them of the danger which threatened them, the ſignals of diſtreſs directed to us had been ſufficient to keep the enemy at a diſtance.

It is hardly poſſible to conceive how much the boldeſt dogs tremble on the approach of a lion. Nothing is ſo eaſy as to diſcover, by

their looks, during the night, what kind of ferocious animals are in the neighbourhood. If it be a lion, the dog, without ſtirring from the ſpot, begins to howl in a moſt melancholy tone; he ſeems very uneaſy and reſtleſs; he approaches his maſter, keeps cloſe to him, and fawns upon him as if he meant to ſay, *You muſt defend me.* Other domeſtic animals are under no leſs agitation; all of them ſtart up; not one of them remains in a lying poſture; and the oxen bellow in a plaintive manner, but with a low voice. Horſes beat the earth, and caper about in all directions; goats expreſs their fear alſo by peculiar ſigns; and ſheep, with their heads hung down, collect themſelves into a body, and preſs as cloſely againſt one another as they can. They appear then as one maſs, and continue in that poſition without the leaſt motion. Man alone, haughty and confident of his own ſuperiority, ſnatches up his arms, palpitates with impatience, and pants after his victim.

On ſuch occaſions the terror of Kees was ſtill more apparent. As much frightened by the reports of our fuſees which we fired on the approach of the lion, the leaſt movement would make him ſtart; he moaned like a ſick perſon,

perſon, and dragged himſelf along at my ſide in a moſt languid condition. My cock ſeemed only aſtoniſhed at the convulſive agitation of my camp, while a common hawk would have thrown him into the greateſt conſternation. He dreaded the ſmell of a weaſel more than all the lions of Africa united. Thus each being has ſome enemy which it defies, and the latter in its turn bends before a ſtronger. Man, however, braves all, except thoſe of his own ſpecies.

We indeed ſee animals of the ſame kind fight with one another; but they are impelled to this, merely for a moment, by love, the only paſſion that diſunites them, after which every thing again returns to its former order. A more continued and durable hatred may however be obſerved among domeſtic animals. Is this the effect of education or of example?

But I return to the different ſigns by which danger is announced; and it may be readily believed that no one has had a better opportunity of obſerving them in the minuteſt manner. All the books and compilations, and all the ſpeculative eloquence in the world, can never overturn obſervations ſo often repeated on the grand theatre of the African deſarts.

If it be an hyæna that is prowling in the neighbourhood, the boldeſt of the dogs purſues him to a certain diſtance, and ſeems not to be much afraid of him; and an ox continues lying without manifeſting terror, unleſs it be a young one, which for the firſt time hears this dangerous animal. The caſe is the ſame with the horſe, which, with his foot tied to his halter, remains all night in the meadows, and ſhews no kind of fear.

If it be jackals (a kind of foxes) that are ranging around, the dogs purſue them briſkly as far as poſſible; unleſs, happily for the latter, there be lions or hyænas in the neighbourhood; for as ſoon as they perceive them, fear obliges them to return, and brings them ſoon back to their retreat.

The Hottentots pretend that the jackal is a ſpy to other ferocious animals, and that it comes to provoke and detain the dogs, in order that the lion or the hyæna, ſeizing that opportunity, may more eaſily lay hold of their prey, which, as an acknowledgment for the ſervice received, they ſhare amicably with them.

What I have ſeen confirms pretty ſtrongly this aſſertion, which, perhaps, may be a little exag-

exaggerated. However this may be, it is certain that the moment the jackals begin their concerts, the hyænas never fail to arrive ſpeedily; but they do not ſhew themſelves openly, till they ſee the dogs fully engaged. We always kept two of them coupled together, to bark in the abſence of the reſt, in order to prevent the hyænas, which are leſs afraid of fire than the lion, from approaching too near us.

Next morning, the 15th, day-light had ſcarcely appeared, when we were on foot. After breakfaſt, I diſpatched three hunters to the woods and the plain, with orders to ſearch for buffaloes, antelopes, gnous, and koedoes; whilſt I took with me four of the beſt ſhooters, and three men to carry my large carabine, ammunition, and a few pieces of dried fleſh, in caſe we ſhould be obliged to paſs the whole day in the field; and, leaving old Swanepoel, with the reſt of my peole, to guard the camp, we departed.

In going along the ſide of the river, we kept as near the banks as we could, obſerving the greateſt ſilence. In this manner we marched three hours without diſcovering any thing; but perceiving at length the tract of

an hippopotamus which muſt have paſſed that way in the night, we followed it for an hour and a half, and it conducted us to the place where the animal had thrown itſelf into the water; upon which we diſtributed ourſelves along the banks, at a certain diſtance one from the other, to liſten. The perſon who was at the greateſt diſtance having diſcharged his fuſee, we ran towards him, and found that he had fired at the animal, but miſſed it. Very luckily we did not wait long before we ſaw it appear again, and heard it breathe, but it had reached the oppoſite ſhore. Though the river was very broad, two of my people ſwam over, in hopes of forcing it to keep at leaſt in the middle, if they could not bring it within reach of us. This attempt perfectly ſucceeded; but the animal was ſo timid, that when it breathed it ſcarcely raiſed its noſtrils above the ſurface of the water. As it changed its place every moment, it never ſhewed itſelf in the ſpot where we were waiting for it, and it plunged ſo often and ſo quickly, that it gave us no time to take aim. We had already fired thirty times without touching it. The two Hottentots who croſſed the river had no fuſees;

and the cunning animal remarking that they did not fire, kept continually on that ſide. I therefore diſpatched Pit, who had won the prize in ſhooting at a mark, ordering him to croſs the river out of the animal's ſight, to join his companions by going a little way about, and, above all, not to fire till he was ſure of his aim: all which he executed with much intelligence. The animal, which on the other ſide thought itſelf out of our reach, having no ſuſpicion, raiſed its whole head ſometimes out of the water, and at one of theſe moments, Pit directed his ſhot ſo well, that the hippopotamus received it, and immediately dived. It was ſeverely wounded, I am certain, for it appeared ſoon after with the greater part of its body above the ſurface, and agitated with convulſive motions. Embracing this opportunity, I fired, and lodged my ball in its breaſt, upon which it again plunged, and did not appear till the expiration of twenty-ſeven minutes. Being then dead, it floated along with the current, and ſome of my people having ſwam to it, puſhed it towards us cloſe to the bank.

I can ſcarcely deſcribe the joy which we all felt when we at length ſaw this monſtrous

animal in our poſſeſſion; but I and my people were actuated by very different motives. Gluttony preſented it to their eyes as a delicious morſel, on which they were about to feed; whilſt curioſity exhibited it to my mind as an intereſting object of natural hiſtory, which I did not know but from books and engravings.

The legs of this animal being very ſhort in proportion to its bulk, favoured us ſo much, that we were able to roll it to land, as we would have rolled a German bully. The animal was alſo round; and I could not be ſatisfied with admiring and examining this enormous maſs, which was a female, with the minuteſt attention. Pit's ball had ſtruck exactly above the left eye, and was found lodged in its jaw; but I much doubted whether that had occaſioned its death. Mine, on the contrary, entering preciſely near the omoplate, had broken one of its ribs, and paſſed through its lungs from one ſide to another.

From the muzzle to the root of the tail, it was ten feet ſeven inches in length, and eight feet eleven inches in circumference. Its tuſks, which were crooked, were only five inches in length, and an inch in diameter in the thickeſt part,

part, which induced me to believe that it was a young one. I found no fœtus in it; and its ſtomach contained nothing but ſome leaves and a few chewed reeds. I even obſerved pieces of branches of the ſize of a gooſe quill, which were only flatted. In the ſtomach or excrements, it is generally remarked that large animals, ſuch as the rhinoceros and the elephant, triturate very ſlightly the different kinds of food which they eat.

All the figures of the hippopotamus hitherto given are very imperfect; the beſt I know is undoubtedly that of Mr. Allaman, profeſſor of medicine at Leyden. It was engraved from a drawing ſent to him by Mr. Gordon. In my deſcription of animals, I ſhall copy that which I executed myſelf, and I hope that it will give ſatisfaction to naturaliſts. When I had finiſhed my obſervations, I immediately diſpatched a Hottentot to bring two yoke of ſtrong oxen next morning, to tranſport our capture; and, as it was now dark, we choſe out a large tree, at the root of which we propoſed to paſs the night: but we did not go far from the banks of the river; for as we could not roll the animal farther, and were unwilling to expoſe it to the chance of being devoured by wild

wild beaſts, we were under the neceſſity of having it in our view. We were not ſurrounded or covered by many trees; and this rendered our ſituation ſtill more critical. We might indeed have been eaſily ſurpriſed; but by means of extraordinary fires which we kindled, and of twenty ſhots fired at intervals, we remained all night in perfect tranquillity. We were not however able to ſleep, for we were tormented by myriads of gnats, attracted by the vicinity of the water, and the coolneſs of the place we had choſen. One of my Hottentots, who fell aſleep, was ſo ſtung by them, that his face ſwelled ſo much as to render it almoſt impoſſible to know him.

I took care to order one of the feet of the hippopotamus to be cut off, which my people prepared in the ſame manner as that of the firſt elephant I killed in paſſing the mountain called Duyvals-Kop, to go from the country of Auteniqua to that of Ange-Kloof. I found great difficulty in ſetting my people to work, for they had ſpent the whole night in ſtuffing themſelves with the fleſh of the hippopotamus. I ſaw them broil pieces two or three feet in length, and a foot in breadth; and they ſeemed to be in want of nothing except ſleep.

The

The foot which had been dreſſed for me during the night was ſerved up for my breakfaſt; it was exceedingly nouriſhing; and I thought it even ſuperior to that of the elephant: it was more delicate, and I never eat any thing in my life with more pleaſure.

Though the hippopotamus is extremely fat, its greaſe has nothing in it diſguſting; and it does not produce any of thoſe bad effects which are occaſioned by that of other animals. My people melted it, and drank it from baſins, as if it had been broth. Beſides this, by rubbing it over their bodies, they ſhone as much as if they had been varniſhed, and their ſwollen bellies ſufficiently ſhewed that they had not been very ſparing in their repaſts during the night.

I had forgot to order a horſe for myſelf; but Swanepoel ſupplied this omiſſion; for the heat was exceſſive, and we were diſtant full ſix leagues from my camp. Having fixed a large chain to the head of the hippopotamus, and yoked twelve oxen to it, while they went along the banks of the river they experienced much difficulty and fatigue, either from the inequality of the road, or from the trunks of large trees, which every moment interrupted

their

their paſſage; but when we once arrived at the level country, which was covered with long graſs, I ordered the oxen to be relieved; and obſerving that they went on at a good pace, I mounted my horſe, to get before them. Yager, my favourite dog, which never quitted me, and always followed me in my hunting excurſions, was obliged for this time to remain behind, not being able to keep up with me. He copied the example of my Hottentots, and did not arrive with them till five in the afternoon.

The three hunters whom I had ſent out in another quarter had alſo returned completely loaded, having killed two gnous and three antelopes; ſo that we found ourſelves ſufficiently ſtocked with proviſions: but the great heat, and the friction of the hippopotamus againſt the earth, had ſo mangled and hurt its body, that ſome of the moſt tender and delicate parts were ſpoilt, and began to ſmell. On this account we were obliged to employ the night in cutting it up: part of it was ſalted in the ſkins of the two gnous which my hunters had brought with them; and the choice morſels I ordered to be put into a brandy barrel, the head of which we knocked out after we had

had drawn off the liquor into earthen jugs. This operation afforded my people an opportunity of getting drunk.

The night following our two lions returned again, and I imagined that all the jackals and hyænas of the country had aſſembled to pay us a viſit. One of the latter had the boldneſs to croſs our fires, and to advance cloſe to the ſpot where we were. A Hottentot diſcharged his piece at it, but he unluckily miſſed his aim. The jackals even entered our camp; and, without the aſſiſtance of our dogs, we ſhould have been forced to ſhare our booty with theſe animals, which ſeemed determined not to be diſappointed.

Next morning my people were employed in cutting to pieces the hide of the hippopotamus, to make what in the country are called *chanboc*. Theſe are whips for flogging the oxen which are under the hand of the driver on the pole of the waggon: they are ſhaped like thoſe uſed in Europe for horſes, but they are thicker and longer; and as the ſkin, where ſtrongeſt, may be about two inches in thickneſs, they are cut into thongs two inches broad, which makes theſe pieces about two inches ſquare. They are ſometimes ſix feet in length, and when

when cut out a weight is ſuſpended at their lower extremity, to make them dry ſooner. A round form is then given them by beating them with a mallet, obſerving to make them taper to a point at one of the ends. Thoſe which are made ſmaller for riding have this advantage over thoſe of Europe, that they never break, eſpecially if from time to time care be taken to moiſten them with a little oil.

The ſkin of the rhinoceros is employed for the ſame purpoſe; and the inhabitants of the Cape give it the preference (though a whip made of this is far from being equally ſolid as that made of the other), becauſe it is capable of receiving a finer poliſh, has the beautiful colour of horn, and becomes almoſt as tranſparent.

With regard to the planters, who have no taſte for elegance, and who prefer the uſeful to the agreeable, they employ only the former. Both, indeed, are ſold at a very high rate, as the animals which furniſh the materials for making theſe whips are no longer found in the colonies, and as thoſe individuals who ſometimes penetrate farther are not always certain of meeting with them.

The

The ſkin, however, of theſe animals cannot be better employed. It has a great reſemblance, if we except its thickneſs, to that of the hog; and the hippopotamus approaches very near to that animal. To perſons not previouſly informed, their fat would appear to be entirely the ſame; and, if that of the hippopotamus could be ſalted with all the precautions neceſſary, it might be preferred with more juſtice, as in all the colonies it is reckoned very wholeſome. The people of the Cape are perſuaded that, taken in a potion, it is ſufficient to cure radically thoſe who are afflicted with diſorders of the breaſt. That which I preſerved in bottles made of ſkins had the uſual conſiſtency of olive oil, during the great colds of winter.

The tuſks of the hippopotamus are endowed with a quality which renders them preferable to ivory. The latter, in time, becomes yellow; but, in whatever manner the former may be prepared, they retain their whiteneſs in all its purity. It is not therefore aſtoniſhing that the Europeans, and, above all, the French, conſider them as a great object of traffic. By the aſſiſtance of art they ſupply the deficiencies of nature, and make a moſt

a moſt admirable figure in the mouth of a pretty woman.

This prize was ſo ſeducing that my Hottentots depended on enjoying the pleaſure of a ſecond hunting excurſion; but I found that we had a ſufficiency of proviſions, and that it would be better to employ our time more uſefully, and to vary our occupations, or rather our pleaſures, a little more. Having a ſtrong inclination to try my net here, it was with great difficulty we could find a place in the river convenient for caſting it; we however, ſomehow ſucceeded; but we caught only about twenty fiſh, of different kinds. The largeſt were ſcarcely ſix inches in length; and when fried in the greaſe of the hippopotamus they appeared to me excellent. As this ſport procured us no advantage worthy of attention, and as I was diſguſted with the embarraſſment we experienced in approaching the river in the manner we wiſhed, I ordered the net to be carried away. During the time my people were employed in folding it, a bird perched near us, which, inſtead of being frightened by our preſence, approached more and more, ſending forth very ſhrill cries. I was told that it was the bird which diſcovers honey;

and I remarked in its geſtures and cry a great affinity with thoſe of the bird known to ornithologiſts under the name of the *cuculus indicator*; but it was much larger than thoſe which I had before ſeen. My Hottentots, who reſpect it on account of the ſervices which it renders them, begged me to ſpare it. A new ſpecies, however, was to be added to my collection, and I killed it. This bird is of the genus of the common *indicator*, but larger, and different in its plumage; it is a variety of it.

I did more afterwards, I killed three different ſpecies of theſe birds, all equally indicators.

The ſavages of Africa know them well, and treat them as deities. They live only on honey or wax; and it is they that involuntarily point out to them where they will find abundant repoſitories of both.

Naturaliſts, for what reaſon I know not, place the *indicator* among the cuckoos; it has no relation, however, to this genus, but in the conformation of its feet; and being different by other phyſical characters, it is much more ſo by its manner of living. At the riſk of being expoſed to an anathema from the cabi-

nets of the ſcientific, I muſt continually repeat that large volumes piled up in libraries are nothing to the book of nature; and that an error, though ſupported by an hundred eloquent pens, is nevertheleſs ſtill an error.

This bird is no more a cuckoo than pies, barbets, perroquets, toucans, and all thoſe ſpecies which have two toes before and two behind. If it is to be ranked in any known claſs, it would belong rather to that of the barbets, becauſe it has more affinity to theſe.

In its ſtomach I found nothing but honey and wax: I did not obſerve the ſmalleſt portion of any inſect. Its ſkin is thick, and ſo tough, that when it is freſh it can ſcarcely be penetrated by a pin. This to me is an inſtance of the wonderful precaution of nature, which having deſtined it to contend for its ſubſiſtence with the moſt ingenious of all inſects, gave it a covering ſtrong enough to defend it, from their ſtings.

It builds its neſt in hollow trees, climbs up to it in the ſame manner as the wood-pecker, and hatches its eggs itſelf. This circumſtance is ſufficient to ſeparate it totally from the cuckoo, and to make it a new genus.

In my ornithology will be given accurate figures

figures and deſcriptions of the three ſpecies of *indicators* which I know.

My Hottentot, Klaas, on returning from hunting, brought me an eagle which he had killed. It was a ſpecies I had never before ſeen, and which no author has deſcribed. For this ſervice, I rewarded him in a proper manner, and gave him a ration of tobacco; not that I ought to be generous towards a man whom I tenderly loved, and to whom I could not refuſe the ſmalleſt favour, without being cruel, but by his example to excite all my people to make ſome diſcoveries.

This bird, which was entirely black, ſeemed to me, by its characteriſtics, to belong rather to the vulture than the eagle kind; but I knew that it differed in its manners. In every thing elſe, the analogy is very great; for, when neceſſary, the eagle becomes a vulture; that is to ſay, when preſſed by hunger, if nothing better occurs, for the moment, it feeds as well as any other bird of prey upon rotten carrion; and it is a great error to imagine that it lives only upon what it catches itſelf. When I cauſed the remains of the large animals we had killed to be ſcattered in the fields, in order to attract carnivorous birds, eagles and

butcher-birds came alſo to partake of them, as well as vultures.

I muſt here aſk pardon of the ancient and modern poets, for thus degrading the dignity of this noble animal: it is ſhocking I confeſs, to ſee this ſublime bird of the maſter of the gods fall ſhamefully upon the ſcattered remains of an infectious carcaſe, and feed with great pleaſure.

On the 18th we ſpent part of the night in firing our pieces to drive away two more lions, and a voracious flock of hyænas. I did not ſleep till very late, and when I awaked I was greatly ſurpriſed to find about a ſcore of the Gonaqua Hottentots in my camp. This viſit, and its conſequences, deſerve a more ample detail. The reader, in this plain narration, will acquire juſter ideas reſpecting the African ſavages, than from all the diſſertations of philoſophers.

The chief approached to pay his reſpects to me, and the women in full dreſs marched behind him. They all ſhone very much, and had been newly *boughoued*; that is to ſay, after rubbing their bodies with greaſe, they had beſprinkled themſelves with a kind of red powder, made of a root named in the country *boughou*,

boughou, and which has a very agreeable odor. Their faces were all painted in a different manner, and each of them made me ſome ſmall preſent. One gave me oſtrich's eggs, another a young lamb, and ſome offered me an abundant proviſion of milk in baſkets which appeared to be made of oſier. Theſe utenſils aſtoniſhed me much. "Milk in baſ-"kets!" ſaid I: "ſuch an invention undoubt-"edly announces a great deal of ingenuity!" And calling to mind thoſe milk veſſels made of copper, which were formerly uſed at Paris, before they were proſcribed by the wiſdom of the police, I perceived, on comparing them with the former, how inferior a great people, with all their arts, their learned men, and their Louvre, often are, in reſpect of their ſimpleſt wants, to thoſe whom they affect to deſpiſe,

Theſe pretty baſkets are woven of ſo delicate reeds, and ſo cloſe in their texture, that they may be employed in carrying water; on this account I found them of very great ſervice afterwards. The chief of the Gonaquas informed me that they were made by the Caffres, from whom they procured them by giving them other things in exchange.

The chief, who was named *Haabas*, made

me a preſent of a bunch of oſtrich feathers, exceedingly beautiful. To ſhew him how much I valued it, I immediately tore away a plume of the ſame kind, which I wore in my hat, and put his in its place. By the looks of the good old man, I could eaſily perceive how much he was pleaſed with what I had done; and he ſtill farther teſtified by his geſtures and words the ſatisfaction he received from my conduct.

It was now my turn to ſhew my gratitude to the chief, and I began by giving him a few pounds of tobacco. I was about to enjoy a moſt agreeable ſcene at very little expence, and to render more than one happy. By a common ſignal Haabas ordered all his people to approach; and in an inſtant they formed themſelves into a circle, and ſquatted down like ſo many apes. All the tobacco was diſtributed; and I remarked, with much pleaſure, that the portion which Haabas reſerved for himſelf was not larger than any of the reſt. I was ſenſibly affected by this goodneſs of heart and ſpirit of juſtice, which he diſplayed in ſo ſimple and natural a manner; and I gave him for himſelf, in addition to the preſent made before, a knife, a piece of ſteel, a box of tinder,

and

and a necklace of large glaſs beads. To the women I gave beads and copper wire for bracelets. Amidſt theſe reciprocal preſents and the ſentiments of affection with which they mutually inſpired us, I obſerved a young girl of ſixteen confounded with the crowd, who ſhewed more curioſity in examining my perſon, than eagerneſs to ſhare in the trinkets which I was diſtributing to her companions. She looked at me with ſo much attention, that I approached her that ſhe might have more time to ſurvey me at her leiſure. I found that her figure was altogether enchanting; ſhe had the freſheſt and the moſt beautiful teeth in the world; her perſon was ſlender and elegant, and her ſhape, formed to inſpire love, might have ſerved as a model for the pencil of Albano. She was the youngeſt of the Graces, under the figure of a Hottentot.

The impreſſions made by beauty are univerſal: it is a ſovereign who reigns over all; and I was ſenſible, by the profuſion of my preſents, that I bowed a little under its ſway. My young ſavage ſoon grew familiar. I had given her a girdle, a pair of bracelets, and a necklace of large white beads, with which ſhe ſeemed to be highly delighted. I untied from

my neck a red handkerchief, which ſhe wrapped round her head; and with this dreſs ſhe was what in polite language might be called charming. I took great pleaſure in ornamenting her myſelf; and, when I had finiſhed, ſhe requeſted ſome trinkets for her ſiſter, who had remained with the horde. With her finger ſhe pointed out her mother; and at the ſame time informed me that ſhe had no father. I haraſſed her with queſtions, for I found ſo many charms in her anſwers. Nothing could equal the pleaſure I enjoyed in ſeeing her, except that which I received from her converſation. I aſked her to remain with me, and made her promiſes of every kind; but when I ſpoke to her, above all, of carrying her with me to Europe; where I ſaid all the women were queens, and commanded hordes of ſlaves; far from ſuffering herſelf to be tempted, ſhe rejected all my propoſals, and without any ceremony began to grow peeviſh and impatient. A monarch could not have overcome her reſiſtance, and the ſorrow which ſhe felt from the mere idea of quitting her family and her horde. I concluded by begging her at leaſt to bring her ſiſter to me, telling her that ſhe would have every reaſon to be ſatisfied in her

her turn. This ſhe promiſed to do; and at th ſame inſtant ſhe fixed her eyes upon a chair that ſtood not far from me. Having ſhewn me a knife which I had left there by chance, I preſented it to her, and ſhe immediately gave it to her mother.

This girl's whole thoughts were continually engaged by her dreſs, which to her was entirely new. She touched her arms, her feet, her necklace, and her girdle, and put her hands twenty times to her head to feel her handkerchief, which pleaſed her much. Having opened my dreſſing-box, I drew from it a mirror, which I placed before her; and ſhe ſurveyed herſelf ſome time in it with much attention and complaiſance. By her geſtures and various attitudes, ſhe ſufficiently ſhewed how much ſhe was ſatisfied; I do not ſay with her figure, but with her ornaments, which ſtill made the ſtrongeſt impreſſions on her mind. When ſhe had dreſſed in the morning, before the horde ſet out to ſee me, ſhe had rubbed greaſe and tallow over her cheeks, which I ordered to be cleaned and waſhed; but I could never perſuade her that this aſſiſtance of art deſtroyed the charms of nature, which had formed her very pretty. Whatever ingenuity I employed

in

in my reaſoning, and whatever might be the effect of her complacency, in reſtoring to her freſh cheeks that delicate bloom of youth ſo frail and fading, ſhe was always attached to her villainous black greaſe with as much obſtinacy as the ladies in Europe are attached to their rouge, and to all their paſtes, which are no leſs diſguſting, and perhaps much more pernicious.

My young beauty having begged me to give her my mirror, I complied with her requeſt; and ſhe took a wonderful advantage of this favour, which I had ſo readily granted, to aſk me for every thing that ſtruck her fancy. I always ſuffered myſelf to be overcome; but I was at length obliged to refuſe her ſeveral articles, both on account of their being indiſpenſably neceſſary to me, and from a fear that ſhe might make a dangerous uſe of them. My knee-buckles had alſo tempted her; for the ſtones with which they were ſet had greatly attracted her eyes; and I ſhould have been very glad to have had it in my power to gratify her once more. How much did I wiſh upon this occaſion for the moſt wretched pair of ſteel, to replace this article of luxury, in other reſpects very uſeleſs! Unluckily theſe

were

were the only pair I had in my poſſeſſion: I gave her to underſtand that they were abſolutely neceſſary to me, and from that moment ſhe never more thought of them. She had the good ſenſe not to be affronted at any of my refuſals; it was ſufficient for me to ſay no only once, to make her change her object.

I found her name difficult to be pronounced, diſagreeable to the ear, and very inſignificant according to my ideas; I therefore gave her a new one, and called her *Narina*, which, in the Hottentot language, ſignifies a flower. I begged her to retain this pretty name, which ſuited her in many reſpects; and this ſhe promiſed to do as long as ſhe lived, in remembrance of my viſit to her country, and as a teſtimony of my love, for ſhe was already no ſtranger to this paſſion; and in her natural and affecting language fully ſhewed how powerful the firſt impreſſion is, and that, in the boſom of the African deſarts, one muſt not even attempt to be happy.

Having ordered a ſheep to be killed, and a large quantity of our hippopotamus to be dreſſed to regale our gueſts, they gave themſelves up to all the extravagance of joy. Every body danced;

danced; and my Hottentots, like gallant and polite gentlemen, regaled theſe ſavages with their muſic. The moſt ſkilful performers ſounded the goura, the joumjoum, and the rabouquin; the lucky Jews harp was not forgotten; and this new inſtrument produced the moſt lively ſenſations in all the company. Narina, like all other pretty women, who thing nothing impoſſible to them, wiſhed to try it alſo; but, like all other pretty women, who ſoon become impatient with their leſſon, ſhe diſdainfully threw away the inſtrument, which ſhe found deteſtable.

The whole of this day was ſpent in frolics and merriment; and my people diſtributed their ration of brandy, independent of that which I had ordered to be given them in particular. I with pleaſure obſerved that Narina could not taſte it; and this ſobriety redoubled the eſteem I had entertained for her; for I deteſt this liquor, and am aſtoniſhed that our women ſhould be fond of this moſt diſguſting of poiſons.

I ordered a quantity of wood neceſſary for making our fires to be collected early, and this operation was ſoon performed. The Gonaquas joined the party, and made ample

proviſion for themſelves, as I had permitted them to remain till the next morning, and had aſſigned them a place at ſome diſtance from my camp, where they might paſs the night.

In the evening when the fires were kindled, I regaled my people with tea and coffee. Narina ſeemed to like the tea, but the colour of the coffee made her conceive an averſion to that liquor. I put my hand upon her eyes, and made her ſwallow half a cupful more of it; but ſhe ſtill gave the preference to tea. She even drank of it very often; and this on her part was a piece of fineſſe which I pretended not to perceive, and which afforded me much amuſement. I am perſuaded that ſhe did not much reliſh this liquor, but ſhe made haſte to ſwallow it, that ſhe might, in the bottom of the cup, get at a piece of ſugar-candy, which ſhe had ſeen me throw into it.

After this frugal repaſt, and the diverting ſcenes it procured me, the dancing recommenced; and towards midnight the need of repoſe put an end to our pleaſures.

Having for ſome time ſlept in my waggon to avoid the night damps, I entruſted the chief of the Gonaquas with the care of guard-

ing

ing my camp, and I lodged the old man in my largeſt tent.

The reader perhaps expects to ſee my favourite excepted from the law by which I confined all the horde to certain boundaries, and has perhaps no faith in my continence. Narina kept cloſe by me, and never thought of quitting her friend. I ſhewed her where her mother and friends were at ſome diſtance from us, and——Narina then bid me good night.

I diſpatched two of my people completely armed, to paſs the night near theſe Gonaquas, and to defend them from voracious animals. When every one had retired to reſt, I ordered that no perſon after that ſhould be ſuffered either to enter or to go out.

I could however ſcarcely ſleep, for every thing that had happened ſince the arrival of theſe ſavages recurred to my imagination under the moſt whimſical and extraordinary colours. What I had learned reſpecting the manners and character of theſe people, compared with the ridiculous and inſipid relations of our romantic travellers, appeared to me ſo pure, ſo ſimple, and ſo engaging; my converſations particularly with Haabas and Narina had intereſted me ſo much, that I curſed even the

rapid

rapid moments which deprived me of theſe animated ſcenes, and I regretted that I could not prolong their courſe.

Scarcely had the day begun to appear, when I awoke, and went to viſit my Gonaquas, who were all ſunk in profound ſleep, huddled together under their kroſſes *. Narina was with her mother lying upon a mat, which I had given her to ſecure her from the moiſture. The other ſeven women, heaped all together, formed a very pleaſant group; for neither their heads nor their feet were to be ſeen, as they were entirely hid under their covering. Having ſaluted them by diſcharging my fuſee at their ears, I ſaw a number of frightened countenances ſtart up from below their kroſſes, which exhibited a moſt comic ſcene. Some of the ſleepers however did not awake, which is not at all ſurpriſing; for the ſleep of the Hottentots is near akin to a lethargy.

Having left them to recover the uſe of their ſenſes at leiſure, I went to traverſe the banks

* Cloaks made of the ſkins of different animals, which the Hottentots all generally uſe, either to clothe them during the day, or to cover them in the night-time. I ſhall have occaſion to ſpeak of them in a fuller manner hereafter.

of

of the river, in order to ſhoot a few birds before the heat ſhould commence; for the north wind, which in theſe latitudes performs the ſame office as the ſouth in France, ſeemed to announce a very ſcorching day. At ten o'clock I returned with a few birds, and among others a red long-tailed fly-catcher, which I conſidered, and very juſtly, as a happy diſcovery. This charming animal, the predominant colour of which is indeed a moſt beautiful red, has a ſtill more beautiful tuft on its head, and two very long feathers in its tail, which give it an air of dignity that the female does not ſhare with it. This advantage, however, the male does not enjoy but in the breeding ſeaſon, which continues three months: after that period theſe two feathers drop of themſelves, and nothing then diſtinguiſhes the male from the female but a browner tint.

We muſt not confound this ſpecies of bird with one of the ſame kind deſcribed by Briſſon and Buffon, under the name of the long-tailed creſted fly-catcher of the Cape of Good Hope; for this bird is not found at the Cape: it belongs to India, and particularly to the iſland of Ceylon, and differs much from mine. The marks by which they are diſtinguiſhed

will be related in my ornithology. I ſhall only here aſſure the reader that the two fly-catchers deſcribed under that name, one of which is red, and the other almoſt white, and which are given as two diſtinct ſpecies, form abſolutely only one; and this variety in the colour ariſes from the difference of the ſeaſons. One may be eaſily convinced of the truth of this, by examining in my collection one of theſe birds, which ſtill partaking of both ſtates clearly ſhews the ſucceſſive paſſage from white to red.

That which I had killed never experienced ſuch a change; and this diſtinction alone ought to make us not confound them, as has been hitherto done, but to eſtabliſh a new ſpecies.

After depoſiting my capture in my tent, I returned to the camp of my gueſts; but I found there only men; all the women had diſappeared: and I learned that they were gone to bathe. Being curious to ſee this ceremony, I repaired to the river; and I was not long in diſcovering them, for their voices and laughter ſoon conducted me to the ſpot. Having glided ſoftly along between the trees and buſhes, I got cloſe to the bank without being perceived,

and found them all ſwimming, ſporting in the water, and diving with wonderful dexterity. When I had ſurveyed theſe female bathers at my leiſure, I ſoon put an end to their ſport by firing my fuſee; upon which they all plunged down in the water, leaving nothing above the ſurface but the points of their noſes. I then ſeated myſelf on their clothes which were heaped together, where I took a pleaſure in jeering them; and, ſhewing them their ſmall aprons one after the other, invited them to come for them. Narina's mother laughed heartily at the embarraſſment of her companions; for ſhe had quitted the water before the reſt, and was repoſing herſelf under a tree, till they ſhould join her. Having entreated me in vain a long time to depart, only one reſource was left them, which they employed with a ſhrewdneſs that aſtoniſhed me. Narina's mother well knowing the aſcendancy that her beautiful daughter had over me, threw her apron and kroſs to her; the latter then dreſſing herſelf in the water, ſoon after came towards me, with the moſt ſimple and tender air, to beg that I would retire for a few moments, in order that theſe women might have time to put on their veſtments. I at firſt pretended

tended to be a little obſtinate ; but Narina, taking me by the hand, dragged me along with her, till, being out of ſight, ſhe could call out to her companions that they might quit the water, and dreſs.

Narina becoming more and more familiar, continued to walk with me towards my tent, ſporting as freely with me as ſhe would have done with her brother, her parents, or her companions. She joked with me after her own manner, and teaſed me, ſometimes ſtruggling to diſengage herſelf from my arms, and ſometimes to avoid me, jumping over buſhes, ravines, and the broadeſt ditches. Being then young and vigorous, long inured to the moſt fatiguing labours, and a life a thouſand times harder than that of theſe ſavages themſelves, I could have defied an European Hercules : but whether it was cuſtom, or ſome remains of gallantry, that made me employ only the half of my ſtrength againſt the young Narina, or that in reality ſhe ſhewed more addreſs, and was more agile in her motions, ſhe compelled me to deſiſt, and I yielded under her efforts ; but, above all, when ſhe eſcaped from me, and got to a little diſtance, ſhe outſtripped me in the courſe, and was ſoon

beyond my reach. With what velocity did ſhe run along the highways, and by a thouſand windings return to conceal herſelf at the edge of a wood, and to ſurpriſe me as I paſſed!

As I obſerved birds of various kinds flying around in the foreſt, I could not help entering it, as this was the only method I could find of allaying the impetuoſity of my young ſavage. Nothing could equal the pleaſure ſhe experienced on ſeeing me fire my fuſee, which I did often, and I killed about a ſcore of birds. I had not carried any of my dogs along with me; but Narina, who ſupplied their place, caught in an admirable manner thoſe which were only wounded. By this time I had loſt ſight of my camp, and had advanced rather too far. The ſporting and play of my young companion at length bewildered me entirely; and ſhe did not put an end to her romping until ſhe had given me an excellent leſſon, and made the beſt return poſſible to the trick I had played her a little before, on the banks of the river Groot-Vis. Having fallen in with this river, which I knew would direct me to my camp, I fired at a heron, and killed it. Fallen near the bank, and being carried away

away by the current, I was in danger of loſing it; and this diſappointment would have given me the greater uneaſineſs, as one of the ſame ſpecies, which I procured with much difficulty, had one day, by the negligence of ſome of my people, been entirely ſpoilt in my tent. I therefore plunged into the river, which reached up to my middle; but getting entangled in the herbs which grew on its banks, and having not yet forgot the accident at Queur-Boom, I was unwilling to advance farther. Narina, who perceived my embarraſſment, and the awkward ſituation into which I had got by running after my bird, was much aſtoniſhed that I ſhould be afraid of truſting myſelf to the current. In an inſtant therefore ſhe threw herſelf into the water, and began to ſwim, whilſt I returned to the bank; but the cruel creature who had ſeized my bird, held it up in her hand, and, calling out to me, deſired me to come and fetch it. After a thouſand prayers, and the moſt earneſt entreaties, inſtead of complying with my requeſt, ſhe made for the other bank, with the velocity of an arrow, where ſhe ridiculed me at her eaſe, and laughed at me for my timidity. I have already ſaid that I could not ſwim; and if ever there was a

con-

conjuncture in which I had occaſion to complain, this without doubt was a mortifying one, and which ought to have incited me in the ſtrongeſt manner to ſupply this inexcuſable deficiency in my education. When I found that I could have no influence over my pretty romp, I reſolved to ſit down on the banks of the river, and to wait for her with patience. She herſelf ſoon grew tired of her ſport; and, throwing herſelf into the river again, ſwam over, after ſhewing her ſkill, by diving ſeveral times in her paſſage. While ſhe was in the water I more than once preſented my fuſee, as if about to take aim at her; but nothing that I could do ſeemed to terrify her. On this account ſhe was ſtill more playful and obſtinate in refuſing me my heron. We both however at length purſued our route very peaceably together, and returned towards my tent.

The reſt of the Gonaqua women, whom we had left lower down on the banks of the river, having rejoined us, I could plainly read ſome remains of ſhame in their countenances and looks. I myſelf ought indeed to have bluſhed, for wounding their delicacy in ſo cruel a manner. On this occaſion I had ſeen natural modeſty, which is very different from that reſerve

which women often aſſume through pride, and which is only an enticing ſtratagem, more dangerous than ſcandal reduced to the completeſt embarraſſment.

After I had made my ſavages dine, I ordered the table to be brought upon which I diſſected animals, and which I employed only for that purpoſe. This, with two chairs, formed all the furniture of my tent. I then began to flay the birds I had killed in the morning. This operation ſurpriſed them much; they looked at me with aſtoniſhment, and could not conceive why I had deprived birds of their lives in order to ſtrip them, and immediately after to reſtore them to their former figure. I did not however waſte my time in boaſting to them of the cabinets and collections of Europe, or in telling them how much they were eſteemed. They undoubtedly might have wondered that I ſhould have come ſo far with no other deſign than that of procuring animals: and the queſtion of Narina, who aſked me if there were no birds in my own country, appeared to me extremely ſimple and natural. I thought that no diſſertation on this ſubject with ſavages, who would not have comprehended what I ſaid, was equal to the pleaſure

of

of preparing a king's-fiſher, which I gave to my inquiſitive beauty.

Haabas prevailed upon me to move my camp, in order that I might erect it nearer his horde, where he told me I ſhould find a great variety of birds of every kind. Having given me to underſtand that we were only about two leagues diſtant form it, I promiſed that I would go thither in the courſe of a few days.

As he was preparing to depart, I regaled him and all his people with a dinner, and gave him a ſmall proviſion of tobacco for himſelf, which afforded him much pleaſure. Narina promiſed to bring me milk, and to return in a ſhort time with her ſiſter. At length, highly ſatisfied with each other, after a thouſand farewels, theſe good people left me, accompanied by ſome of my Hottentots, whom I had commiſſioned to reconnoitre the way, and to procure me a few ſheep by barter.

END OF THE FIRST VOLUME.

DT826 .L65
Travels into the interior parts of
Princeton Theological Seminary-Speer Library
1 1012 00056 4163